# AutoGen - The Automated Program Generator

For version 5.9, May 2008

**Bruce Korb**
bkorb@gnu.org

AutoGen copyright © 1992-2007 Bruce Korb

This is the second edition of the GNU AutoGen documentation,

Published by Bruce Korb, 910 Redwood Dr., Santa Cruz, CA 95060

AutoGen is free software: you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation, either version 3 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.

AutoGen is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU General Public License for more details.

You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License along with this program. If not, see <http://www.gnu.org/licenses/>.

This manual is for GNU AutoGen version 5.9, updated May 2008.

Copyright © 1992-2007 by Bruce Korb.

> Permission is granted to copy, distribute and/or modify this document under the terms of the GNU Free Documentation License, Version 1.2 or any later version published by the Free Software Foundation; with no Invariant Sections, no Front-Cover Texts, and no Back-Cover Texts.

# 1 Introduction

AutoGen is a tool designed for generating program files that contain repetitive text with varied substitutions. Its goal is to simplify the maintenance of programs that contain large amounts of repetitious text. This is especially valuable if there are several blocks of such text that must be kept synchronized in parallel tables.

One common example is the problem of maintaining the code required for processing program options. Processing options requires a minimum of four different constructs be kept in proper order in different places in your program. You need at least:

1. The flag character in the flag string,
2. code to process the flag when it is encountered,
3. a global state variable or two, and
4. a line in the usage text.

You will need more things besides this if you choose to implement long option names, rc/ini/config file processing, environment variables and so on. All of this can be done mechanically; with the proper templates and this program. In fact, it has already been done and AutoGen itself uses it See Chapter 7 [AutoOpts], page 73. For a simple example of Automated Option processing, See Section 7.3 [Quick Start], page 76. For a full list of the Automated Option features, See Section 7.1 [Features], page 73.

## 1.1 The Purpose of AutoGen

The idea of this program is to have a text file, a template if you will, that contains the general text of the desired output file. That file includes substitution expressions and sections of text that are replicated under the control of separate definition files.

AutoGen was designed with the following features:

1. The definitions are completely separate from the template. By completely isolating the definitions from the template it greatly increases the flexibility of the template implementation. A secondary goal is that a template user only needs to specify those data that are necessary to describe his application of a template.
2. Each datum in the definitions is named. Thus, the definitions can be rearranged, augmented and become obsolete without it being necessary to go back and clean up older definition files. Reduce incompatibilities!
3. Every definition name defines an array of values, even when there is only one entry. These arrays of values are used to control the replication of sections of the template.
4. There are named collections of definitions. They form a nested hierarchy. Associated values are collected and associated with a group name. These associated data are used collectively in sets of substitutions.
5. The template has special markers to indicate where substitutions are required, much like the `${VAR}` construct in a shell `here doc`. These markers are not fixed strings. They are specified at the start of each template. Template designers know best what fits into their syntax and can avoid marker conflicts.

   We did this because it is burdensome and difficult to avoid conflicts using either M4 tokenization or C preprocessor substitution rules. It also makes it easier to specify

expressions that transform the value. Of course, our expressions are less cryptic than the shell methods.

6. These same markers are used, in conjunction with enclosed keywords, to indicate sections of text that are to be skipped and for sections of text that are to be repeated. This is a major improvement over using C preprocessing macros. With the C preprocessor, you have no way of selecting output text because it is an *un*varying, mechanical substitution process.
7. Finally, we supply methods for carefully controlling the output. Sometimes, it is just simply easier and clearer to compute some text or a value in one context when its application needs to be later. So, functions are available for saving text or values for later use.

## 1.2 A Simple Example

This is just one simple example that shows a few basic features. If you are interested, you also may run "make check" with the `VERBOSE` environment variable set and see a number of other examples in the '`agen5/test/testdir`' directory.

Assume you have an enumeration of names and you wish to associate some string with each name. Assume also, for the sake of this example, that it is either too complex or too large to maintain easily by hand. We will start by writing an abbreviated version of what the result is supposed to be. We will use that to construct our output templates.

In a header file, '`list.h`', you define the enumeration and the global array containing the associated strings:

```
typedef enum {
        IDX_ALPHA,
        IDX_BETA,
        IDX_OMEGA }  list_enum;

extern char const* az_name_list[ 3 ];
```

Then you also have '`list.c`' that defines the actual strings:

```
#include "list.h"
char const* az_name_list[] = {
        "some alpha stuff",
        "more beta stuff",
        "final omega stuff" };
```

First, we will define the information that is unique for each enumeration name/string pair. This would be placed in a file named, '`list.def`', for example.

```
autogen definitions list;
list = { list_element = alpha;
         list_info    = "some alpha stuff"; };
list = { list_info    = "more beta stuff";
         list_element = beta; };
list = { list_element = omega;
         list_info    = "final omega stuff"; };
```

The `autogen definitions list;` entry defines the file as an AutoGen definition file that uses a template named `list`. That is followed by three `list` entries that define the

associations between the enumeration names and the strings. The order of the differently named elements inside of list is unimportant. They are reversed inside of the `beta` entry and the output is unaffected.

Now, to actually create the output, we need a template or two that can be expanded into the files you want. In this program, we use a single template that is capable of multiple output files. The definitions above refer to a '`list`' template, so it would normally be named, '`list.tpl`'.

It looks something like this. (For a full description, See Chapter 3 [Template File], page 20.)

```
[+ AutoGen5 template h c +]
[+ CASE (suffix) +][+
   ==  h  +]
typedef enum {[+
   FOR list "," +]
        IDX_[+ (string-upcase! (get "list_element")) +][+
   ENDFOR list +] }  list_enum;

extern char const* az_name_list[ [+ (count "list") +] ];
[+

   ==  c  +]
#include "list.h"
char const* az_name_list[] = {[+
  FOR list "," +]
        "[+list_info+]"[+
  ENDFOR list +] };[+

ESAC +]
```

The `[+ AutoGen5 template h c +]` text tells AutoGen that this is an AutoGen version 5 template file; that it is to be processed twice; that the start macro marker is `[+`; and the end marker is `+]`. The template will be processed first with a suffix value of `h` and then with `c`. Normally, the suffix values are appended to the '`base-name`' to create the output file name.

The `[+ == h +]` and `[+ == c +] CASE` selection clauses select different text for the two different passes. In this example, the output is nearly disjoint and could have been put in two separate templates. However, sometimes there are common sections and this is just an example.

The `[+FOR list "," +]` and `[+ ENDFOR list +]` clauses delimit a block of text that will be repeated for every definition of `list`. Inside of that block, the definition name-value pairs that are members of each `list` are available for substitutions.

The remainder of the macros are expressions. Some of these contain special expression functions that are dependent on AutoGen named values; others are simply Scheme expressions, the result of which will be inserted into the output text. Other expressions are names of AutoGen values. These values will be inserted into the output text. For example, `[+list_info+]` will result in the value associated with the name `list_info` being inserted

between the double quotes and `(string-upcase! (get "list_element"))` will first "get" the value associated with the name `list_element`, then change the case of all the letters to upper case. The result will be inserted into the output document.

If you have compiled AutoGen, you can copy out the template and definitions as described above and run `autogen list.def`. This will produce exactly the hypothesized desired output.

One more point, too. Lets say you decided it was too much trouble to figure out how to use AutoGen, so you created this enumeration and string list with thousands of entries. Now, requirements have changed and it has become necessary to map a string containing the enumeration name into the enumeration number. With AutoGen, you just alter the template to emit the table of names. It will be guaranteed to be in the correct order, missing none of the entries. If you want to do that by hand, well, good luck.

## 1.3 csh/zsh caveat

AutoGen tries to use your normal shell so that you can supply shell code in a manner you are accustomed to using. If, however, you use csh or zsh, you cannot do this. Csh is sufficiently difficult to program that it is unsupported. Zsh, though largely programmable, also has some anomalies that make it incompatible with AutoGen usage. Therefore, when invoking AutoGen from these environments, you must be certain to set the SHELL environment variable to a Bourne-derived shell, e.g., sh, ksh or bash.

Any shell you choose for your own scripts need to follow these basic requirements:

1. It handles `trap $sig ":"` without output to standard out. This is done when the server shell is first started. If your shell does not handle this, then it may be able to by loading functions from its start up files.
2. At the beginning of each scriptlet, the command `\\cd $PWD` is inserted. This ensures that `cd` is not aliased to something peculiar and each scriptlet starts life in the execution directory.
3. At the end of each scriptlet, the command `echo mumble` is appended. The program you use as a shell must emit the single argument `mumble` on a line by itself.

## 1.4 A User's Perspective

Alexandre wrote:
>
> I'd appreciate opinions from others about advantages/disadvantages of
> each of these macro packages.

I am using AutoGen in my pet project, and find one of its best points to be that it separates the operational data from the implementation.

Indulge me for a few paragraphs, and all will be revealed: In the manual, Bruce cites the example of maintaining command line flags inside the source code; traditionally spreading usage information, flag names, letters and processing across several functions (if not files). Investing the time in writing a sort of boiler plate (a template in AutoGen terminology) pays by moving all of the option details (usage, flags names etc.) into a well structured table (a definition file if you will), so that adding a new command line option becomes a simple matter of adding a set of details to the table.

So far so good! Of course, now that there is a template, writing all of that tedious optargs processing and usage functions is no longer an issue. Creating a table of the options needed for the new project and running AutoGen generates all of the option processing code in C automatically from just the tabular data. AutoGen in fact already ships with such a template... AutoOpts.

One final consequence of the good separation in the design of AutoGen is that it is retargetable to a greater extent. The egcs/gcc/fixinc/inclhack.def can equally be used (with different templates) to create a shell script (inclhack.sh) or a c program (fixincl.c).

This is just the tip of the iceberg. AutoGen is far more powerful than these examples might indicate, and has many other varied uses. I am certain Bruce or I could supply you with many and varied examples, and I would heartily recommend that you try it for your project and see for yourself how it compares to m4.

As an aside, I would be interested to see whether someone might be persuaded to rationalise autoconf with AutoGen in place of m4... Ben, are you listening? autoconf-3.0! 'kay? =)O|

Sincerely,

Gary V. Vaughan

# 2 Definitions File

This chapter describes the syntax and semantics of the AutoGen definition file. In order to instantiate a template, you normally must provide a definitions file that identifies itself and contains some value definitions. Consequently, we keep it very simple. For "advanced" users, there are preprocessing directives, sparse arrays, named indexes and comments that may be used as well.

The definitions file is used to associate values with names. Every value is implicitly an array of values, even if there is only one value. Values may be either simple strings or compound collections of name-value pairs. An array may not contain both simple and compound members. Fundamentally, it is as simple as:

```
prog-name = "autogen";
flag = {
    name      = templ_dirs;
    value     = L;
    descrip   = "Template search directory list";
};
```

For purposes of commenting and controlling the processing of the definitions, C-style comments and most C preprocessing directives are honored. The major exception is that the `#if` directive is ignored, along with all following text through the matching `#endif` directive. The C preprocessor is not actually invoked, so C macro substitution is **not** performed.

## 2.1 The Identification Definition

The first definition in this file is used to identify it as a AutoGen file. It consists of the two keywords, '`autogen`' and '`definitions`' followed by the default template name and a terminating semi-colon (`;`). That is:

`AutoGen Definitions` *`template-name`*`;`

Note that, other than the name *template-name*, the words '`AutoGen`' and '`Definitions`' are searched for without case sensitivity. Most lookups in this program are case insensitive.

Also, if the input contains more identification definitions, they will be ignored. This is done so that you may include (see Section 2.5 [Directives], page 10) other definition files without an identification conflict.

AutoGen uses the name of the template to find the corresponding template file. It searches for the file in the following way, stopping when it finds the file:

1. It tries to open '`./`*`template-name`*'. If it fails,
2. it tries '`./`*`template-name`*`.tpl`'.
3. It searches for either of these files in the directories listed in the templ-dirs command line option.

If AutoGen fails to find the template file in one of these places, it prints an error message and exits.

## 2.2 Named Definitions

Any name may have multiple values associated with it in the definition file. If there is more than one instance, the **only** way to expand all of the copies of it is by using the FOR (see Section 3.6.14 [FOR], page 55) text function on it, as described in the next chapter.

There are two kinds of definitions, '`simple`' and '`compound`'. They are defined thus (see Section 2.9 [Full Syntax], page 14):

```
compound_name '=' '{' definition-list '}' ';'

simple_name '=' string ';'

no_text_name ';'
```

`No_text_name` is a simple definition with a shorthand empty string value. The string values for definitions may be specified in any of several formation rules.

### 2.2.1 Definition List

`definition-list` is a list of definitions that may or may not contain nested compound definitions. Any such definitions may **only** be expanded within a `FOR` block iterating over the containing compound definition. See Section 3.6.14 [FOR], page 55.

Here is, again, the example definitions from the previous chapter, with three additional name value pairs. Two with an empty value assigned (*first* and *last*), and a "global" *group_name*.

```
autogen definitions list;
group_name = example;
list = { list_element = alpha;  first;
         list_info    = "some alpha stuff"; };
list = { list_info    = "more beta stuff";
         list_element = beta; };
list = { list_element = omega;  last;
         list_info    = "final omega stuff"; };
```

### 2.2.2 Double Quote String

The string follows the C-style escaping (`\`, `\n`, `\f`, `\v`, etc.), plus octal character numbers specified as `\ooo`. The difference from "C" is that the string may span multiple lines. Like ANSI "C", a series of these strings, possibly intermixed with single quote strings, will be concatenated together.

### 2.2.3 Single Quote String

This is similar to the shell single-quote string. However, escapes `\` are honored before another escape, single quotes `'` and hash characters `#`. This latter is done specifically to disambiguate lines starting with a hash character inside of a quoted string. In other words,

```
fumble = '
#endif
';
```

could be misinterpreted by the definitions scanner, whereas this would not:

```
fumble = '
\#endif
';
```

As with the double quote string, a series of these, even intermixed with double quote strings, will be concatenated together.

### 2.2.4 Shell Output String

This is assembled according to the same rules as the double quote string, except that there is no concatenation of strings and the resulting string is written to a shell server process. The definition takes on the value of the output string.

NB The text is interpreted by a server shell. There may be left over state from previous server shell processing. This scriptlet may also leave state for subsequent processing. However, a `cd` to the original directory is always issued before the new command is issued.

### 2.2.5 An Unquoted String

A simple string that does not contain white space *may* be left unquoted. The string must not contain any of the characters special to the definition text (i.e., `"`, `#`, `'`, `(`, `)`, `,`, `;`, `<`, `=`, `>`, `[`, `]`, `‘`, `{`, or `}`). This list is subject to change, but it will never contain underscore (`_`), period (`.`), slash (`/`), colon (`:`), hyphen (`-`) or backslash (`\\`). Basically, if the string looks like it is a normal DOS or UNIX file or variable name, and it is not one of two keywords (‘`autogen`’ or ‘`definitions`’) then it is OK to not quote it, otherwise you should.

### 2.2.6 Scheme Result String

A scheme result string must begin with an open parenthesis `(`. The scheme expression will be evaluated by Guile and the value will be the result. The AutoGen expression functions are **dis**abled at this stage, so do not use them.

### 2.2.7 A Here String

A ‘`here string`’ is formed in much the same way as a shell here doc. It is denoted with two less than characters(`<<`) and, optionally, a hyphen. This is followed by optional horizontal white space and an ending marker-identifier. This marker must follow the syntax rules for identifiers. Unlike the shell version, however, you must not quote this marker.

The resulting string will start with the first character on the next line and continue up to but not including the newline that precedes the line that begins with the marker token. If a hyphen follows the less than characters, then leading tabs will be stripped and the terminating marker will be recognized even if preceded by tabs. No backslash or any other kind of processing is done on this string. The characters are copied directly into the result string.

Here are two examples:

```
str1 = <<-  STR_END
        $quotes = " ' ‘
        STR_END;

str2 = <<   STR_END
```

```
        $quotes = " ' `
        STR_END;
STR_END;
```

The first string contains no new line characters. The first character is the dollar sign, the last the back quote.

The second string contains one new line character. The first character is the tab character preceding the dollar sign. The last character is the semicolon after the `STR_END`. That `STR_END` does not end the string because it is not at the beginning of the line. In the preceding case, the leading tab was stripped.

### 2.2.8 Concatenated Strings

If single or double quote characters are used, then you also have the option, a la ANSI-C syntax, of implicitly concatenating a series of them together, with intervening white space ignored.

NB You **cannot** use directives to alter the string content. That is,

```
str = "fumble"
#ifdef LATER
      "stumble"
#endif
      ;
```

will result in a syntax error. The preprocessing directives are not carried out by the C preprocessor. However,

```
str = '"fumble\n"
#ifdef LATER
"     stumble\n"
#endif
';
```

**Will** work. It will enclose the '`#ifdef LATER`' and '`#endif`' in the string. But it may also wreak havoc with the definition processing directives. The hash characters in the first column should be disambiguated with an escape `\` or join them with previous lines: `"fumble\n#ifdef LATER....`

## 2.3 Assigning an Index to a Definition

In AutoGen, every name is implicitly an array of values. When assigning values, they are usually implicitly assigned to the next highest slot. They can also be specified explicitly:

```
mumble[9] = stumble;
mumble[0] = grumble;
```

If, subsequently, you assign a value to `mumble` without an index, its index will be `10`, not `1`. If indexes are specified, they must not cause conflicts.

`#define`-d names may also be used for index values. This is equivalent to the above:

```
#define FIRST 0
#define LAST  9
mumble[LAST]  = stumble;
mumble[FIRST] = grumble;
```

All values in a range do **not** have to be filled in. If you leave gaps, then you will have a sparse array. This is fine (see Section 3.6.14 [FOR], page 55). You have your choice of iterating over all the defined values, or iterating over a range of slots. This:

```
[+ FOR mumble +][+ ENDFOR +]
```

iterates over all and only the defined entries, whereas this:

```
[+ FOR mumble (for-by 1) +][+ ENDFOR +]
```

will iterate over all 10 "slots". Your template will likely have to contain something like this:

```
[+ IF (exist? (sprintf "mumble[%d]" (for-index))) +]
```

or else "mumble" will have to be a compound value that, say, always contains a "grumble" value:

```
[+ IF (exist? "grumble") +]
```

## 2.4 Dynamic Text

There are several methods for including dynamic content inside a definitions file. Three of them are mentioned above (Section 2.2.4 [shell-generated], page 8 and see Section 2.2.6 [scheme-generated], page 8) in the discussion of string formation rules. Another method uses the `#shell` processing directive. It will be discussed in the next section (see Section 2.5 [Directives], page 10). Guile/Scheme may also be used to yield to create definitions.

When the Scheme expression is preceded by a backslash and single quote, then the expression is expected to be an alist of names and values that will be used to create AutoGen definitions.

This method can be be used as follows:

```
\'( (name  (value-expression))
    (name2 (another-expr))  )
```

This is entirely equivalent to:

```
name  = (value-expression);
name2 = (another-expr);
```

Under the covers, the expression gets handed off to a Guile function named `alist->autogen-def` in an expression that looks like this:

```
(alist->autogen-def
    ( (name (value-expression))  (name2 (another-expr)) ) )
```

## 2.5 Controlling What Gets Processed

Definition processing directives can **only** be processed if the '#' character is the first character on a line. Also, if you want a '#' as the first character of a line in one of your string assignments, you should either escape it by preceding it with a backslash '\', or by embedding it in the string as in `"\n#"`.

All of the normal C preprocessing directives are recognized, though several are ignored. There is also an additional `#shell - #endshell` pair. Another minor difference is that AutoGen directives must have the hash character (`#`) in column 1.

The final tweak is that `#!` is treated as a comment line. Using this feature, you can use: '`#! /usr/local/bin/autogen`' as the first line of a definitions file, set the mode to

executable and "run" the definitions file as if it were a direct invocation of AutoGen. This was done for its hack value.

The ignored directives are: '#ident', '#let', '#pragma', and '#if'. Note that when ignoring the #if directive, all intervening text through its matching #endif is also ignored, including the #else clause.

The AutoGen directives that affect the processing of definitions are:

#assert ‘shell-script‘ | (scheme-expr) | <anything else>

If the shell-script or scheme-expr do not yield true valued results, autogen will be aborted. If <anything else> or nothing at all is provided, then this directive is ignored.

When writing the shell script, remember this is on a preprocessing line. Multiple lines must be backslash continued and the result is a single long line. Separate multiple commands with semi-colons.

The result is false (and fails) if the result is empty, the number zero, or a string that starts with the letters 'n' or 'f' ("no" or "false").

#define name [ <text> ]

Will add the name to the define list as if it were a DEFINE program argument. Its value will be the first non-whitespace token following the name. Quotes are **not** processed.

After the definitions file has been processed, any remaining entries in the define list will be added to the environment.

#elif

This must follow an #if otherwise it will generate an error. It will be ignored.

#else

This must follow an #if, #ifdef or #ifndef. If it follows the #if, then it will be ignored. Otherwise, it will change the processing state to the reverse of what it was.

#endif

This must follow an #if, #ifdef or #ifndef. In all cases, this will resume normal processing of text.

#endmac

This terminates a "macdef", but must not ever be encountered directly.

#endshell

Ends the text processed by a command shell into autogen definitions.

#error [ <descriptive text> ]

This directive will cause AutoGen to stop processing and exit with a status of EXIT_FAILURE.

#if [ <ignored conditional expression> ]

#if expressions are not analyzed. **Everything** from here to the matching #endif is skipped.

`#ifdef name-to-test`

The definitions that follow, up to the matching `#endif` will be processed only if there is a corresponding `-Dname` command line option or if a `#define` of that name has been previously encountered.

`#ifndef name-to-test`

The definitions that follow, up to the matching `#endif` will be processed only if there is **not** a corresponding `-Dname` command line option or there was a canceling `-Uname` option.

`#include unadorned-file-name`

This directive will insert definitions from another file into the current collection. If the file name is adorned with double quotes or angle brackets (as in a C program), then the include is ignored.

`#line`

Alters the current line number and/or file name. You may wish to use this directive if you extract definition source from other files. `getdefs` uses this mechanism so AutoGen will report the correct file and approximate line number of any errors found in extracted definitions.

`#macdef`

This is a new AT&T research preprocessing directive. Basically, it is a multi-line #define that may include other preprocessing directives.

`#option opt-name [ <text> ]`

This directive will pass the option name and associated text to the AutoOpts optionLoadLine routine (see Section 7.5.32.8 [libopts-optionLoadLine], page 113). The option text may span multiple lines by continuing them with a backslash. The backslash/newline pair will be replaced with two space characters. This directive may be used to set a search path for locating template files For example, this:

```
#option templ-dirs $ENVVAR/dirname
```

will direct autogen to use the `ENVVAR` environment variable to find a directory named `dirname` that (may) contain templates. Since these directories are searched in most recently supplied first order, search directories supplied in this way will be searched before any supplied on the command line.

`#shell`

Invokes `$SHELL` or '`/bin/sh`' on a script that should generate AutoGen definitions. It does this using the same server process that handles the back-quoted ` text. **CAUTION** let not your `$SHELL` be `csh`.

`#undef name-to-undefine`

Will remove any entries from the define list that match the undef name pattern.

## 2.6 Pre-defined Names

When AutoGen starts, it tries to determine several names from the operating environment and put them into environment variables for use in both `#ifdef` tests in the definitions files

and in shell scripts with environment variable tests. `__autogen__` is always defined. For other names, AutoGen will first try to use the POSIX version of the `sysinfo(2)` system call. Failing that, it will try for the POSIX `uname(2)` call. If neither is available, then only `"__autogen__"` will be inserted into the environment. In all cases, the associated names are converted to lower case, surrounded by doubled underscores and non-symbol characters are replaced with underscores.

With Solaris on a sparc platform, `sysinfo(2)` is available. The following strings are used:

- `SI_SYSNAME` (e.g., `"__sunos__"`)
- `SI_HOSTNAME` (e.g., `"__ellen__"`)
- `SI_ARCHITECTURE` (e.g., `"__sparc__"`)
- `SI_HW_PROVIDER` (e.g., `"__sun_microsystems__"`)
- `SI_PLATFORM` (e.g., `"__sun_ultra_5_10__"`)
- `SI_MACHINE` (e.g., `"__sun4u__"`)

For Linux and other operating systems that only support the `uname(2)` call, AutoGen will use these values:

- `sysname` (e.g., `"__linux__"`)
- `machine` (e.g., `"__i586__"`)
- `nodename` (e.g., `"__bach__"`)

By testing these pre-defines in my definitions, you can select pieces of the definitions without resorting to writing shell scripts that parse the output of `uname(1)`. You can also segregate real C code from autogen definitions by testing for `"__autogen__"`.

```
#ifdef __bach__
  location = home;
#else
  location = work;
#endif
```

## 2.7 Commenting Your Definitions

The definitions file may contain C and C++ style comments.

```
/*
 *  This is a comment.  It continues for several lines and closes
 *  when the characters '*' and '/' appear together.
 */
// this comment is a single line comment
```

## 2.8 What it all looks like.

This is an extended example:

```
autogen definitions 'template-name';
/*
 *  This is a comment that describes what these
 *  definitions are all about.
```

```
 */
global = "value for a global text definition.";

/*
 *  Include a standard set of definitions
 */
#include standards.def

a_block = {
    a_field;
    a_subblock = {
        sub_name  = first;
        sub_field = "sub value.";
    };

#ifdef FEATURE
    a_subblock = {
        sub_name  = second;
    };
#endif

};
```

## 2.9 Finite State Machine Grammar

The preprocessing directives and comments are not part of the grammar. They are handled by the scanner/lexer. The following was extracted directly from the generated defParse-fsm.c source file. The "EVT:" is the token seen, the "STATE:" is the current state and the entries in this table describe the next state and the action to take. Invalid transitions were removed from the table.

```
dp_trans_table[ DP_STATE_CT ][ DP_EVENT_CT ] = {

  /* STATE 0:  DP_ST_INIT */
  { { DP_ST_NEED_DEF, NULL },                        /* EVT:  autogen */
    { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  definitions */
    { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  End-Of-File */
    { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  var_name */
    { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  other_name */
    { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  string */
    { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  here_string */
    { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  number */
    { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  ; */
    { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  = */
    { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  , */
    { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  { */
    { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  } */
    { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  [ */
```

```
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid }                /* EVT:  ] */

/* STATE 1:  DP_ST_NEED_DEF */
{ { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  autogen */
  { DP_ST_NEED_TPL, NULL },                       /* EVT:  definitions */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  End-Of-File */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  var_name */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  other_name */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  string */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  here_string */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  number */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  ; */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  = */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  , */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  { */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  } */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  [ */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid }                /* EVT:  ] */

/* STATE 2:  DP_ST_NEED_TPL */
{ { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  autogen */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  definitions */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  End-Of-File */
  { DP_ST_NEED_SEMI, dp_do_tpl_name },            /* EVT:  var_name */
  { DP_ST_NEED_SEMI, dp_do_tpl_name },            /* EVT:  other_name */
  { DP_ST_NEED_SEMI, dp_do_tpl_name },            /* EVT:  string */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  here_string */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  number */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  ; */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  = */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  , */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  { */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  } */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  [ */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid }                /* EVT:  ] */

/* STATE 3:  DP_ST_NEED_SEMI */
{ { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  autogen */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  definitions */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  End-Of-File */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  var_name */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  other_name */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  string */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  here_string */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  number */
  { DP_ST_NEED_NAME, NULL },                      /* EVT:  ; */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  = */
```

```
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  , */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  { */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  } */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  [ */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid }                 /* EVT:  ] */

/* STATE 4:  DP_ST_NEED_NAME */
{ { DP_ST_NEED_DEF, NULL },                        /* EVT:  autogen */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  definitions */
  { DP_ST_DONE, dp_do_need_name_end },             /* EVT:  End-Of-File */
  { DP_ST_HAVE_NAME, dp_do_need_name_var_name },   /* EVT:  var_name */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  other_name */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  string */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  here_string */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  number */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  ; */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  = */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  , */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  { */
  { DP_ST_HAVE_VALUE, dp_do_end_block },           /* EVT:  } */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  [ */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid }                 /* EVT:  ] */

/* STATE 5:  DP_ST_HAVE_NAME */
{ { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  autogen */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  definitions */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  End-Of-File */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  var_name */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  other_name */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  string */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  here_string */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  number */
  { DP_ST_NEED_NAME, dp_do_empty_val },            /* EVT:  ; */
  { DP_ST_NEED_VALUE, dp_do_have_name_lit_eq },    /* EVT:  = */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  , */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  { */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  } */
  { DP_ST_NEED_IDX, NULL },                        /* EVT:  [ */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid }                 /* EVT:  ] */

/* STATE 6:  DP_ST_NEED_VALUE */
{ { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  autogen */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  definitions */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  End-Of-File */
  { DP_ST_HAVE_VALUE, dp_do_str_value },           /* EVT:  var_name */
  { DP_ST_HAVE_VALUE, dp_do_str_value },           /* EVT:  other_name */
  { DP_ST_HAVE_VALUE, dp_do_str_value },           /* EVT:  string */
```

```
  { DP_ST_HAVE_VALUE, dp_do_str_value },          /* EVT:  here_string */
  { DP_ST_HAVE_VALUE, dp_do_str_value },          /* EVT:  number */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  ; */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  = */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  , */
  { DP_ST_NEED_NAME, dp_do_start_block },         /* EVT:  { */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  } */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  [ */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid }                /* EVT:  ] */

/* STATE 7:  DP_ST_NEED_IDX */
{ { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  autogen */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  definitions */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  End-Of-File */
  { DP_ST_NEED_CBKT, dp_do_indexed_name },        /* EVT:  var_name */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  other_name */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  string */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  here_string */
  { DP_ST_NEED_CBKT, dp_do_indexed_name },        /* EVT:  number */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  ; */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  = */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  , */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  { */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  } */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  [ */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid }                /* EVT:  ] */

/* STATE 8:  DP_ST_NEED_CBKT */
{ { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  autogen */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  definitions */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  End-Of-File */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  var_name */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  other_name */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  string */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  here_string */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  number */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  ; */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  = */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  , */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  { */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  } */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  [ */
  { DP_ST_INDX_NAME, NULL }                       /* EVT:  ] */

/* STATE 9:  DP_ST_INDX_NAME */
{ { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  autogen */
  { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },               /* EVT:  definitions */
```

```
        { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  End-Of-File */
        { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  var_name */
        { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  other_name */
        { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  string */
        { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  here_string */
        { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  number */
        { DP_ST_NEED_NAME, dp_do_empty_val },            /* EVT:  ; */
        { DP_ST_NEED_VALUE, NULL },                      /* EVT:  = */
        { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  , */
        { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  { */
        { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  } */
        { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  [ */
        { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid }                 /* EVT:  ] */

      /* STATE 10:  DP_ST_HAVE_VALUE */
      { { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  autogen */
        { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  definitions */
        { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  End-Of-File */
        { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  var_name */
        { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  other_name */
        { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  string */
        { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  here_string */
        { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  number */
        { DP_ST_NEED_NAME, NULL },                       /* EVT:  ; */
        { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  = */
        { DP_ST_NEED_VALUE, dp_do_next_val },            /* EVT:  , */
        { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  { */
        { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  } */
        { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid },                /* EVT:  [ */
        { DP_ST_INVALID, dp_do_invalid }                 /* EVT:  ] */
```

## 2.10 Alternate Definition Forms

There are several methods for supplying data values for templates.

'`no definitions`'

It is entirely possible to write a template that does not depend upon external definitions. Such a template would likely have an unvarying output, but be convenient nonetheless because of an external library of either AutoGen or Scheme functions, or both. This can be accommodated by providing the `--override-tpl` and `--no-definitions` options on the command line. See Chapter 5 [autogen Invocation], page 61.

'`CGI`'

AutoGen behaves as a CGI server if the definitions input is from stdin and the environment variable `REQUEST_METHOD` is defined and set to either `"GET"` or `"POST"`, See Section 6.2 [AutoGen CGI], page 70. Obviously, all the values are constrained to strings because there is no way to represent nested values.

'XML' AutoGen comes with a program named, `xml2ag`. Its output can either be redirected to a file for later use, or the program can be used as an AutoGen wrapper. See Section 8.6 [xml2ag Invocation], page 166.

The introductory template example (see Section 1.2 [Example Usage], page 2) can be rewritten in XML as follows:

```
<EXAMPLE  template="list.tpl">
<LIST list_element="alpha"
      list_info="some alpha stuff"/>
<LIST list_info="more beta stuff"
      list_element="beta"/>
<LIST list_element="omega"
      list_info="final omega stuff"/>
</EXAMPLE>
```

A more XML-normal form might look like this:

```
<EXAMPLE  template="list.tpl">
<LIST list_element="alpha">some alpha stuff</LIST>
<LIST list_element="beta" >more beta stuff</LIST>
<LIST list_element="omega">final omega stuff</LIST>
</EXAMPLE>
```

but you would have to change the template `list_info` references into `text` references.

'`standard AutoGen definitions`'
Of course. :-)

# 3 Template File

The AutoGen template file defines the content of the output text. It is composed of two parts. The first part consists of a pseudo macro invocation and commentary. It is followed by the template proper.

This pseudo macro is special. It is used to identify the file as a AutoGen template file, fixing the starting and ending marks for the macro invocations in the rest of the file, specifying the list of suffixes to be generated by the template and, optionally, the shell to use for processing shell commands embedded in the template.

AutoGen-ing a file consists of copying text from the template to the output file until a start macro marker is found. The text from the start marker to the end marker constitutes the macro text. AutoGen macros may cause sections of the template to be skipped or processed several times. The process continues until the end of the template is reached. The process is repeated once for each suffix specified in the pseudo macro.

This chapter describes the format of the AutoGen template macros and the usage of the AutoGen native macros. Users may augment these by defining their own macros, See Section 3.6.5 [DEFINE], page 53.

## 3.1 Format of the Pseudo Macro

The pseudo macro is used to tell AutoGen how to process a template. It tells autogen:

1. The start macro marker. It consists of punctuation characters used to demarcate the start of a macro. It may be up to seven characters long and must be the first non-whitespace characters in the file.

   It is generally a good idea to use some sort of opening bracket in the starting macro and closing bracket in the ending macro (e.g. `{`, `(`, `[`, or even `<` in the starting macro). It helps both visually and with editors capable of finding a balancing parenthesis.

2. That start marker must be immediately followed by the identifier strings `"AutoGen5"` and then `"template"`, though capitalization is not important.

The next several components may be intermingled:

3. Zero, one or more suffix specifications tell AutoGen how many times to process the template file. No suffix specifications mean that it is to be processed once and that the generated text is to be written to '`stdout`'. The current suffix for each pass can be determined with the `(suffix)` scheme function (see Section 3.4.42 [SCM suffix], page 33).

   The suffix specification consists of a sequence of POSIX compliant file name characters and, optionally, an equal sign and a file name formatting specification. That specification may be either an ordinary sequence of file name characters with zero, one or two `"%s"` formatting sequences in it, or else it may be a Scheme expression that, when evaluated, produces such a string. The Scheme result may not be empty. The two string arguments allowed for that string are the base name of the definition file, and the current suffix (that being the text to the left of the equal sign). (Note: `"POSIX compliant file name characters"` consist of alphanumerics plus the period (`.`), hyphen (`-`) and underscore (`_`) characters.)

If the suffix begins with one of these three latter characters and a formatting string is not specified, then that character is presumed to be the suffix separator. Otherwise, without a specified format string, a single period will separate the suffix from the base name in constructing the output file name.

4. Comments: blank lines, lines starting with a hash mark [#]), and edit mode comments (text between pairs of `-*-` strings).

5. Some scheme expressions may be inserted in order to make configuration changes before template processing begins. "`before template processing begins`" means that there is no current output file, no current suffix and, basically, none of the AutoGen specific functions (see Section 3.4 [AutoGen Functions], page 25) may be invoked.

   It is used, for example, to allow the template writer to specify the shell program that must be used to interpret the shell commands in the template. It can have no effect on any shell commands in the definitions file, as that file will have been processed by the time the pseudo macro is interpreted.

   ```
   (setenv "SHELL" "/bin/sh")
   ```

   This is extremely useful to ensure that the shell used is the one the template was written to use. By default, AutoGen determines the shell to use by user preferences. Sometimes, that can be the "csh", though.

   The scheme expression can also be used to save a pre-existing output file for later text extraction (see Section 3.5.8 [SCM extract], page 36).

   ```
   (shellf "mv -f %1$s.c %1$s.sav" (base-name))
   ```

After these must come the end macro marker:

6. The punctuation characters used to demarcate the end of a macro. Like the start marker, it must consist of seven or fewer punctuation characters.

The ending macro marker has a few constraints on its content. Some of them are just advisory, though. There is no special check for advisory restrictions.

- It must not begin with a POSIX file name character (hyphen `-`, underscore `_` or period `.`), the backslash (\) or open parenthesis (`(`). These are used to identify a suffix specification, indicate Scheme code and trim white space.
- If it begins with an equal sign, then it must be separated from any suffix specification by white space.
- The closing marker may not begin with an open parenthesis, as that is used to enclose a scheme expression.
- It cannot begin with a backslash, as that is used to indicate white space trimming after the end macro mark. If, in the body of the template, you put the backslash character (\) before the end macro mark, then any white space characters after the mark and through the newline character are trimmed.
- It is also helpful to avoid using the comment marker (`#`). It might be seen as a comment within the pseudo macro.
- You should avoid using any of the quote characters double, single or back-quote. It won't confuse AutoGen, but it might well confuse you and/or your editor.

As an example, assume we want to use `[+` and `+]` as the start and end macro markers, and we wish to produce a '`.c`' and a '`.h`' file, then the pseudo macro might look something like this:

```
[+ AutoGen5 template -*- Mode: emacs-mode-of-choice -*-
h=chk-%s.h
c
# make sure we don't use csh:
(setenv "SHELL" "/bin/sh")  +]
```

The template proper starts after the pseudo-macro. The starting character is either the first non-whitespace character or the first character after the newline that follows the end macro marker.

## 3.2 Naming a value

When an AutoGen value is specified in a template, it is specified by name. The name may be a simple name, or a compound name of several components. Since each named value in AutoGen is implicitly an array of one or more values, each component may have an index associated with it.

It looks like this:

```
comp-name-1 . comp-name-2 [ 2 ]
```

Note that if there are multiple components to a name, each component name is separated by a dot (`.`). Indexes follow a component name, enclosed in square brackets (`[` and `]`). The index may be either an integer or an integer-valued define name. The first component of the name is searched for in the current definition level. If not found, higher levels will be searched until either a value is found, or there are no more definition levels. Subsequent components of the name must be found within the context of the newly-current definition level. Also, if the named value is prefixed by a dot (`.`), then the value search is started in the current context only. No higher levels are searched.

If someone rewrites this, I'll incorporate it. :-)

## 3.3 Macro Expression Syntax

AutoGen has two types of expressions: full expressions and basic ones. A full AutoGen expression can appear by itself, or as the argument to certain AutoGen built-in macros: CASE, IF, ELIF, INCLUDE, INVOKE (explicit invocation, see Section 3.6.17 [INVOKE], page 57), and WHILE. If it appears by itself, the result is inserted into the output. If it is an argument to one of these macros, the macro code will act on it sensibly.

You are constrained to basic expressions only when passing arguments to user defined macros, See Section 3.6.5 [DEFINE], page 53.

The syntax of a full AutoGen expression is:

```
[[ <apply-code> ] <value-name> ] [ <basic-expr-1> [ <basic-expr-2> ]]
```

How the expression is evaluated depends upon the presence or absence of the apply code and value name. The "value name" is the name of an AutoGen defined value, or not. If it does not name such a value, the expression result is generally the empty string. All expressions must contain either a `value-name` or a `basic-expr`.

### 3.3.1 Apply Code

The "apply code" selected determines the method of evaluating the expression. There are five apply codes, including the non-use of an apply code.

‘no apply code’

This is the most common expression type. Expressions of this sort come in three flavors:

‘<value-name>’

The result is the value of value-name, if defined. Otherwise it is the empty string.

‘<basic-expr>’

The result of the basic expression is the result of the full expression, See Section 3.3.2 [basic expression], page 24.

‘<value-name> <basic-expr>’

If there is a defined value for value-name, then the basic-expr is evaluated. Otherwise, the result is the empty string.

‘% <value-name> <basic-expr>’

If value-name is defined, use basic-expr as a format string for sprintf. Then, if the basic-expr is either a back-quoted string or a parenthesized expression, then hand the result to the appropriate interpreter for further evaluation. Otherwise, for single and double quote strings, the result is the result of the sprintf operation. Naturally, if value-name is not defined, the result is the empty string.

For example, assume that fumble had the string value, stumble:

```
[+ % fumble ‘printf ’%%x\\n’ $%s‘ +]
```

This would cause the shell to evaluate "printf ’%x\n’ $stumble". Assuming that the shell variable stumble had a numeric value, the expression result would be that number, in hex. Note the need for doubled percent characters and backslashes.

‘? <value-name> <basic-expr-1> <basic-expr-2>’

Two basic-expr-s are required. If the value-name is defined, then the first basic-expr-1 is evaluated, otherwise basic-expr-2 is.

‘- <value-name> <basic-expr>’

Evaluate basic-expr only if value-name is *not* defined.

‘?% <value-name> <basic-expr-1> <basic-expr-2>’

This combines the functions of ‘?’ and ‘%’. If value-name is defined, it behaves exactly like ‘%’, above, using basic-expr-1. If not defined, then basic-expr-2 is evaluated.

For example, assume again that fumble had the string value, stumble:

```
[+ ?% fumble ‘cat $%s‘ ‘pwd‘ +]
```

This would cause the shell to evaluate "cat $stumble". If fumble were not defined, then the result would be the name of our current directory.

### 3.3.2 Basic Expression

A basic expression can have one of the following forms:

`''STRING''`

A single quoted string. Backslashes can be used to protect single quotes (`'`), hash characters (`#`), or backslashes (\) in the string. All other characters of STRING are output as-is when the single quoted string is evaluated. Backslashes are processed before the hash character for consistency with the definition syntax. It is needed there to avoid preprocessing conflicts.

`'"STRING"'`

A double quoted string. This is a cooked text string as in C, except that they are not concatenated with adjacent strings. Evaluating `"STRING"` will output STRING with all backslash sequences interpreted.

```STRING``'`

A back quoted string. When this expression is evaluated, STRING is first interpreted as a cooked string (as in `'"STRING"'`) and evaluated as a shell expression by the AutoGen server shell. This expression is replaced by the '`stdout`' output of the shell.

`'(STRING)'`

A parenthesized expression. It will be passed to the Guile interpreter for evaluation and replaced by the resulting value. If there is a Scheme error in this expression, Guile 1.4 and Guile 1.6 will report the template line number where the error occurs. Guile 1.7 has lost this capability.

Additionally, other than in the `%` and `?%` expressions, the Guile expressions may be introduced with the Guile comment character (`;`) and you may put a series of Guile expressions within a single macro. They will be implicitly evaluated as if they were arguments to the `(begin ...)` expression. The result will be the result of the last Guile expression evaluated.
```

## 3.4 AutoGen Scheme Functions

AutoGen uses Guile to interpret Scheme expressions within AutoGen macros. All of the normal Guile functions are available, plus several extensions (see Section 3.5 [Common Functions], page 35) have been added to augment the repertoire of string manipulation functions and manage the state of AutoGen processing.

This section describes those functions that are specific to AutoGen. Please take note that these AutoGen specific functions are not loaded and thus not made available until after the command line options have been processed and the AutoGen definitions have been loaded. They may, of course, be used in Scheme functions that get defined at those times, but they cannot be invoked.

### 3.4.1 'ag-function?' - test for function

Usage: (ag-function? ag-name)
return SCM_BOOL_T if a specified name is a user-defined AutoGen macro, otherwise return SCM_BOOL_F.

Arguments:
ag-name - name of AutoGen macro

### 3.4.2 'base-name' - base output name

Usage: (base-name)
Returns a string containing the base name of the output file(s). Generally, this is also the base name of the definitions file.

This Scheme function takes no arguments.

### 3.4.3 'chdir' - Change current directory

Usage: (chdir dir)
Sets the current directory for AutoGen. Shell commands will run from this directory as well. This is a wrapper around the Guile native function. It returns its directory name argument and fails the program on failure.

Arguments:
dir - new directory name

### 3.4.4 'count' - definition count

Usage: (count ag-name)
Count the number of entries for a definition. The input argument must be a string containing the name of the AutoGen values to be counted. If there is no value associated with the name, the result is an SCM immediate integer value of zero.

Arguments:
ag-name - name of AutoGen value

### 3.4.5 'def-file' - definitions file name

Usage: (def-file)
Get the name of the definitions file. Returns the name of the source file containing the AutoGen definitions.

This Scheme function takes no arguments.

### 3.4.6 'def-file-line' - get a definition file+line number

Usage: (def-file-line ag-name [ msg-fmt ])
Returns the file and line number of a AutoGen defined value, using either the default format, "from %s line %d", or else the format you supply. For example, if you want to insert a "C" language file-line directive, you would supply the format "# %2$d \"%1$s\"", but that is also already supplied with the scheme variable See Section 3.4.46 [SCM c-file-line-fmt], page 34. You may use it thus:

```
(def-file-line "ag-def-name" c-file-line-fmt)
```

It is also safe to use the formatting string, "%2$d". AutoGen uses an argument vector version of printf: See Section 8.7 [snprintfv], page 171.

Arguments:
ag-name - name of AutoGen value
msg-fmt - Optional - formatting for line message

### 3.4.7 'dne' - "Do Not Edit" warning

Usage: (dne prefix [ first_prefix ] [ optpfx ])
Generate a "DO NOT EDIT" or "EDIT WITH CARE" warning string. Which depends on whether or not the `--writable` command line option was set. The first argument is a per-line string prefix. The optional second argument is a prefix for the first-line and, in read-only mode, activates the editor hints.

```
-*- buffer-read-only: t -*- vi: set ro:
```

The warning string also includes information about the template used to construct the file and the definitions used in its instantiation.

The optional third argument is used when the first argument is actually an invocation option and the prefix arguments get shifted. The first argument must be, specifically, "-d". That is used to signify that the date stamp should not be inserted into the output.

Arguments:
prefix - string for starting each output line
first_prefix - Optional - for the first output line
optpfx - Optional - shifted prefix

### 3.4.8 'error' - display message and exit

Usage: (error message)
The argument is a string that printed out as part of an error message. The message is formed from the formatting string:

```
DEFINITIONS ERROR in %s line %d for %s:  %s\n
```

The first three arguments to this format are provided by the routine and are: The name of the template file, the line within the template where the error was found, and the current output file name.

After displaying the message, the current output file is removed and autogen exits with the EXIT_FAILURE error code. IF, however, the argument begins with the number 0 (zero), or the string is the empty string, then processing continues with the next suffix.

Arguments:
message - message to display before exiting

### 3.4.9 'exist?' - test for value name

Usage: (exist? ag-name)
return SCM_BOOL_T iff a specified name has an AutoGen value. The name may include indexes and/or member names. All but the last member name must be an aggregate definition. For example:

```
(exist? "foo[3].bar.baz")
```

will yield true if all of the following is true:
There is a member value of either group or string type named `baz` for some group value `bar` that is a member of the `foo` group with index `3`. There may be multiple entries of `bar` within `foo`, only one needs to contain a value for `baz`.

Arguments:
ag-name - name of AutoGen value

### 3.4.10 'find-file' - locate a file in the search path

Usage: (find-file file-name [ suffix ])
AutoGen has a search path that it uses to locate template and definition files. This function will search the same list for '`file-name`', both with and without the '`.suffix`', if provided.

Arguments:
file-name - name of file with text
suffix - Optional - file suffix to try, too

### 3.4.11 'first-for?' - detect first iteration

Usage: (first-for? [ for_var ])
Returns SCM_BOOL_T if the named FOR loop (or, if not named, the current innermost loop) is on the first pass through the data. Outside of any FOR loop, it returns SCM_UNDEFINED. See Section 3.6.14 [FOR], page 55.

Arguments:
for_var - Optional - which for loop

### 3.4.12 'for-by' - set iteration step

Usage: (for-by by)
This function records the "step by" information for an AutoGen FOR function. Outside of the FOR macro itself, this function will emit an error. See Section 3.6.14 [FOR], page 55.

Arguments:
by - the iteration increment for the AutoGen FOR macro

### 3.4.13 'for-from' - set initial index

Usage: (for-from from)
This function records the initial index information for an AutoGen FOR function. Outside of the FOR macro itself, this function will emit an error. See Section 3.6.14 [FOR], page 55.

Arguments:
from - the initial index for the AutoGen FOR macro

### 3.4.14 'for-index' - get current loop index

Usage: (for-index [ for_var ])
Returns the current index for the named FOR loop. If not named, then the index for the innermost loop. Outside of any FOR loop, it returns SCM_UNDEFINED. See Section 3.6.14 [FOR], page 55.

Arguments:
for_var - Optional - which for loop

### 3.4.15 'for-sep' - set loop separation string

Usage: (for-sep separator)
This function records the separation string that is to be inserted between each iteration of an AutoGen FOR function. This is often nothing more than a comma. Outside of the FOR macro itself, this function will emit an error.

Arguments:
separator - the text to insert between the output of each FOR iteration

### 3.4.16 'for-to' - set ending index

Usage: (for-to to)
This function records the terminating value information for an AutoGen FOR function. Outside of the FOR macro itself, this function will emit an error. See Section 3.6.14 [FOR], page 55.

Arguments:
to - the final index for the AutoGen FOR macro

### 3.4.17 'get' - get named value

Usage: (get ag-name [ alt-val ])
Get the first string value associated with the name. It will either return the associated string value (if the name resolves), the alternate value (if one is provided), or else the empty string.

Arguments:
ag-name - name of AutoGen value
alt-val - Optional - value if not present

### 3.4.18 'get-c-name' - get named value, mapped to C name syntax

Usage: (get-c-name ag-name)
Get the first string value associated with the name. It will either return the associated string value (if the name resolves), the alternate value (if one is provided), or else the empty string. The result is passed through "string->c-name!".

Arguments:
ag-name - name of AutoGen value

### 3.4.19 'get-down-name' - get lower cased named value, mapped to C name syntax

Usage: (get-down-name ag-name)
Get the first string value associated with the name. It will either return the associated string

value (if the name resolves), the alternate value (if one is provided), or else the empty string. The result is passed through "string->c-name!" and "string->down-case!".

Arguments:
ag-name - name of AutoGen value

### 3.4.20 'get-up-name' - get upper cased named value, mapped to C name syntax

Usage: (get-up-name ag-name)
Get the first string value associated with the name. It will either return the associated string value (if the name resolves), the alternate value (if one is provided), or else the empty string. The result is passed through "string->c-name!" and "string->up-case!".

Arguments:
ag-name - name of AutoGen value

### 3.4.21 'high-lim' - get highest value index

Usage: (high-lim ag-name)
Returns the highest index associated with an array of definitions. This is generally, but not necessarily, one less than the `count` value. (The indexes may be specified, rendering a non-zero based or sparse array of values.)

This is very useful for specifying the size of a zero-based array of values where not all values are present. For example:

```
tMyStruct myVals[ [+ (+ 1 (high-lim "my-val-list")) +] ];
```

Arguments:
ag-name - name of AutoGen value

### 3.4.22 'last-for?' - detect last iteration

Usage: (last-for? [ for_var ])
Returns SCM_BOOL_T if the named FOR loop (or, if not named, the current inner-most loop) is on the last pass through the data. Outside of any FOR loop, it returns SCM_UNDEFINED. See Section 3.6.14 [FOR], page 55.

Arguments:
for_var - Optional - which for loop

### 3.4.23 'len' - get count of values

Usage: (len ag-name)
If the named object is a group definition, then "len" is the same as "count". Otherwise, if it is one or more text definitions, then it is the sum of their string lengths. If it is a single text definition, then it is equivalent to `(string-length (get "ag-name"))`.

Arguments:
ag-name - name of AutoGen value

### 3.4.24 'low-lim' - get lowest value index

Usage: (low-lim ag-name)
Returns the lowest index associated with an array of definitions.

Arguments:
ag-name - name of AutoGen value

### 3.4.25 'make-header-guard' - make self-inclusion guard

Usage: (make-header-guard name)
This function will create a `#ifndef`/`#define` sequence for protecting a header from multiple evaluation. It will also set the Scheme variable `header-file` to the name of the file being protected and it will set `header-guard` to the name of the `#define` being used to protect it. It is expected that this will be used as follows:

```
[+ (make-header-guard "group_name") +]
...
#endif /* [+ (. header-guard) +] */

#include "[+ (. header-file)  +]"
```

The `#define` name is composed as follows:

1. The first element is the string argument and a separating underscore.
2. That is followed by the name of the header file with illegal characters mapped to underscores.
3. The end of the name is always, `"_GUARD"`.
4. Finally, the entire string is mapped to upper case.

The final `#define` name is stored in an SCM symbol named `header-guard`. Consequently, the concluding `#endif` for the file should read something like:

```
#endif /* [+ (. header-guard) +] */
```

The name of the header file (the current output file) is also stored in an SCM symbol, `header-file`. Therefore, if you are also generating a C file that uses the previously generated header file, you can put this into that generated file:

```
#include "[+ (. header-file) +]"
```

Obviously, if you are going to produce more than one header file from a particular template, you will need to be careful how these SCM symbols get handled.

Arguments:
name - header group name

### 3.4.26 'match-value?' - test for matching value

Usage: (match-value? op ag-name test-str)
This function answers the question, "Is there an AutoGen value named `ag-name` with a value that matches the pattern `test-str` using the match function `op`?" Return SCM_BOOL_T iff at least one occurrence of the specified name has such a value. The operator can be any function that takes two string arguments and yields a boolean. It is expected that you will use one of the string matching functions provided by AutoGen.
The value name must follow the same rules as the `ag-name` argument for `exist?` (see Section 3.4.9 [SCM exist?], page 27).

Arguments:
op - boolean result operator

ag-name - name of AutoGen value
test-str - string to test against

### 3.4.27 'out-delete' - delete current output file

Usage: (out-delete)
Remove the current output file. Cease processing the template for the current suffix. It is an error if there are `push`-ed output files. Use the `(error "0")` scheme function instead. See Section 3.7 [output controls], page 57.

This Scheme function takes no arguments.

### 3.4.28 'out-depth' - output file stack depth

Usage: (out-depth)
Returns the depth of the output file stack. See Section 3.7 [output controls], page 57.

This Scheme function takes no arguments.

### 3.4.29 'out-emit-suspended' - emit the text of suspended output

Usage: (out-emit-suspended suspName)
This function is equivalent to `(begin (out-resume <name>) (out-pop #t))`

Arguments:
suspName - A name tag of suspended output

### 3.4.30 'out-line' - output file line number

Usage: (out-line)
Returns the current line number of the output file. It rewinds and reads the file to count newlines.

This Scheme function takes no arguments.

### 3.4.31 'out-move' - change name of output file

Usage: (out-move new-name)
Rename current output file. See Section 3.7 [output controls], page 57. Please note: changing the name will not save a temporary file from being deleted. It *may*, however, be used on the root output file.

Arguments:
new-name - new name for the current output file

### 3.4.32 'out-name' - current output file name

Usage: (out-name)
Returns the name of the current output file. If the current file is a temporary, unnamed file, then it will scan up the chain until a real output file name is found. See Section 3.7 [output controls], page 57.

This Scheme function takes no arguments.

### 3.4.33 'out-pop' - close current output file

Usage: (out-pop [ disp ])
If there has been a `push` on the output, then close that file and go back to the previously

open file. It is an error if there has not been a `push`. See Section 3.7 [output controls], page 57.

If there is no argument, no further action is taken. Otherwise, the argument should be `#t` and the contents of the file are returned by the function.

Arguments:
disp - Optional - return contents of the file

### 3.4.34 'out-push-add' - append output to file

Usage: (out-push-add file-name)
Identical to `push-new`, except the contents are **not** purged, but appended to. See Section 3.7 [output controls], page 57.

Arguments:
file-name - name of the file to append text to

### 3.4.35 'out-push-new' - purge and create output file

Usage: (out-push-new [ file-name ])
Leave the current output file open, but purge and create a new file that will remain open until a `pop` `delete` or `switch` closes it. The file name is optional and, if omitted, the output will be sent to a temporary file that will be deleted when it is closed. See Section 3.7 [output controls], page 57.

Arguments:
file-name - Optional - name of the file to create

### 3.4.36 'out-resume' - resume suspended output file

Usage: (out-resume suspName)
If there has been a suspended output, then make that output descriptor current again. That output must have been suspended with the same tag name given to this routine as its argument.

Arguments:
suspName - A name tag for reactivating

### 3.4.37 'out-suspend' - suspend current output file

Usage: (out-suspend suspName)
If there has been a `push` on the output, then set aside the output descriptor for later reactiviation with `(out-resume "xxx")`. The tag name need not reflect the name of the output file. In fact, the output file may be an anonymous temporary file. You may also change the tag every time you suspend output to a file, because the tag names are forgotten as soon as the file has been "resumed".

Arguments:
suspName - A name tag for reactivating

### 3.4.38 'out-switch' - close and create new output

Usage: (out-switch file-name)
Switch output files - close current file and make the current file pointer refer to the new file.

This is equivalent to `out-pop` followed by `out-push-new`, except that you may not pop the base level output file, but you may `switch` it. See Section 3.7 [output controls], page 57.

Arguments:
file-name - name of the file to create

### 3.4.39 'set-option' - Set a command line option

Usage: (set-option opt)
The text argument must be an option name followed by any needed option argument. Returns SCM_UNDEFINED.

Arguments:
opt - AutoGen option name + its argument

### 3.4.40 'set-writable' - Make the output file be writable

Usage: (set-writable [ set? ])
This function will set the current output file to be writable (or not). This is only effective if neither the `--writable` nor `--not-writable` have been specified. This state is reset when the current suffix's output is complete.

Arguments:
set? - Optional - boolean arg, false to make output non-writable

### 3.4.41 'stack' - make list of AutoGen values

Usage: (stack ag-name)
Create a scheme list of all the strings that are associated with a name. They must all be text values or we choke.

Arguments:
ag-name - AutoGen value name

### 3.4.42 'suffix' - get the current suffix

Usage: (suffix)
Returns the current active suffix (see Section 3.1 [pseudo macro], page 20).

This Scheme function takes no arguments.

### 3.4.43 'tpl-file' - get the template file name

Usage: (tpl-file [ full_path ])
Returns the name of the current template file. If `#t` is passed in as an argument, then the template file is hunted for in the template search path. Otherwise, just the unadorned name.

Arguments:
full_path - Optional - include full path to file

### 3.4.44 'tpl-file-line' - get the template file+line number

Usage: (tpl-file-line [ msg-fmt ])
Returns the file and line number of the current template macro using either the default format, "from %s line %d", or else the format you supply. For example, if you want to insert a "C" language file-line directive, you would supply the format "# %2$d \"%1$s\"",

but that is also already supplied with the scheme variable See Section 3.4.46 [SCM c-file-line-fmt], page 34. You may use it thus:

```
(tpl-file-line c-file-line-fmt)
```

It is also safe to use the formatting string, `"%2$d"`. AutoGen uses an argument vector version of printf: See Section 8.7 [snprintfv], page 171.

Arguments:
msg-fmt - Optional - formatting for line message

### 3.4.45 'autogen-version' - autogen version number

This is a symbol defining the current AutoGen version number string. It was first defined in AutoGen-5.2.14. It is currently "5.9.5".

### 3.4.46 format file info as, "#line nn "file""

This is a symbol that can easily be used with the functions See Section 3.4.44 [SCM tpl-file-line], page 33, and See Section 3.4.6 [SCM def-file-line], page 26. These will emit C program `#line` directives pointing to template and definitions text, respectively.

## 3.5 Common Scheme Functions

This section describes a number of general purpose functions that make the kind of string processing that AutoGen does a little easier. Unlike the AutoGen specific functions (see Section 3.4 [AutoGen Functions], page 25), these functions are available for direct use during definition load time. The equality test (see Section 3.5.44 [SCM =], page 46) is "overloaded" to do string equivalence comparisons. If you are looking for inequality, the Scheme/Lisp way of spelling that is, "(not (= ...))".

### 3.5.1 'ag-fprintf' - format to autogen stream

Usage: (ag-fprintf ag-diversion format [ format-arg ... ])
Format a string using arguments from the alist. Write to a specified AutoGen diversion. That may be either a specified suspended output stream (see Section 3.4.37 [SCM out-suspend], page 32) or an index into the output stack (see Section 3.4.35 [SCM out-push-new], page 32). `(ag-fprintf 0 ...)` is equivalent to `(emit (sprintf ...))`, and `(ag-fprintf 1 ...)` sends output to the most recently suspended output stream.

Arguments:
ag-diversion - AutoGen diversion name or number
format - formatting string
format-arg - Optional - list of arguments to formatting string

### 3.5.2 'agpl' - GNU Affero General Public License

Usage: (agpl prog-name prefix)
Emit a string that contains the GNU Affero General Public License. It takes two arguments: `prefix` contains the string to start each output line, and `prog_name` contains the name of the program the copyright is about.

Arguments:
prog-name - name of the program under the GPL
prefix - String for starting each output line

### 3.5.3 'bsd' - BSD Public License

Usage: (bsd prog_name owner prefix)
Emit a string that contains the Free BSD Public License. It takes three arguments: `prefix` contains the string to start each output line. `owner` contains the copyright owner. `prog_name` contains the name of the program the copyright is about.

Arguments:
prog_name - name of the program under the BSD
owner - Grantor of the BSD License
prefix - String for starting each output line

### 3.5.4 'c-string' - emit string for ANSI C

Usage: (c-string string)
Reform a string so that, when printed, the C compiler will be able to compile the data and construct a string that contains exactly what the current string contains. Many non-printing characters are replaced with escape sequences. Newlines are replaced with a backslash, an `n`, a closing quote, a newline, seven spaces and another re-opening quote. The compiler will implicitly concatenate them. The reader will see line breaks.

A K&R compiler will choke. Use `kr-string` for that compiler.

Arguments:
string - string to reformat

### 3.5.5 'emit' - emit the text for each argument

Usage: (emit alist ...)
Walk the tree of arguments, displaying the values of displayable SCM types.

Arguments:
alist - list of arguments to stringify and emit

### 3.5.6 'emit-string-table' - output a string table

Usage: (emit-string-table st-name)
Emit into the current output stream a `static char const` array named `st-name` that will have `NUL` bytes between each inserted string.

Arguments:
st-name - the name of the array of characters

### 3.5.7 'error-source-line' - display of file & line

Usage: (error-source-line)
This function is only invoked just before Guile displays an error message. It displays the file name and line number that triggered the evaluation error. You should not need to invoke this routine directly. Guile will do it automatically.

This Scheme function takes no arguments.

### 3.5.8 'extract' - extract text from another file

Usage: (extract file-name marker-fmt [ caveat ] [ default ])
This function is used to help construct output files that may contain text that is carried from one version of the output to the next.

The first two arguments are required, the second are optional:

- The `file-name` argument is used to name the file that contains the demarcated text.
- The `marker-fmt` is a formatting string that is used to construct the starting and ending demarcation strings. The sprintf function is given the `marker-fmt` with two arguments. The first is either `"START"` or `"END"`. The second is either `"DO NOT CHANGE THIS COMMENT"` or the optional `caveat` argument.
- `caveat` is presumed to be absent if it is the empty string (`""`). If absent, "DO NOT CHANGE THIS COMMENT" is used as the second string argument to the `marker-fmt`.
- When a `default` argument is supplied and no pre-existing text is found, then this text will be inserted between the START and END markers.

The resulting strings are presumed to be unique within the subject file. As a simplified example:

```
[+ (extract "fname" "// %s - SOMETHING - %s" ""
"example default") +]
```

will result in the following text being inserted into the output:

```
// START - SOMETHING - DO NOT CHANGE THIS COMMENT
example default
// END   - SOMETHING - DO NOT CHANGE THIS COMMENT
```

The "`example default`" string can then be carried forward to the next generation of the output, *provided* the output is not named `"fname"` *and* the old output is renamed to `"fname"` before AutoGen-eration begins.

**NB:** You can set aside previously generated source files inside the pseudo macro with a Guile/scheme function, extract the text you want to keep with this extract function. Just remember you should delete it at the end, too. Here is an example from my Finite State Machine generator:

```
[+ AutoGen5 Template  -*- Mode: text -*-
h=%s-fsm.h   c=%s-fsm.c
(shellf
"[ -f %1$s-fsm.h ] && mv -f %1$s-fsm.h .fsm.head
[ -f %1$s-fsm.c ] && mv -f %1$s-fsm.c .fsm.code" (base-name)) +]
```

This code will move the two previously produced output files to files named `".fsm.head"` and `".fsm.code"`. At the end of the 'c' output processing, I delete them.

Arguments:
file-name - name of file with text
marker-fmt - format for marker text
caveat - Optional - warn about changing marker
default - Optional - default initial text

### 3.5.9 'format-arg-count' - count the args to a format

Usage: (format-arg-count format)
Sometimes, it is useful to simply be able to figure out how many arguments are required by a format string. For example, if you are extracting a format string for the purpose of generating a macro to invoke a printf-like function, you can run the formatting string through this function to determine how many arguments to provide for in the macro. e.g. for this extraction text:

```
/*=fumble bumble
 * fmt: 'stumble %s: %d\n'
=*/
```

You may wish to generate a macro:

```
#define BUMBLE(a1,a2) printf_like(something,(a1),(a2))
```

You can do this by knowing that the format needs two arguments.

Arguments:
format - formatting string

### 3.5.10 'fprintf' - format to a file

Usage: (fprintf port format [ format-arg ... ])
Format a string using arguments from the alist. Write to a specified port. The result will NOT appear in your output. Use this to print information messages to a template user.

Arguments:
port - Guile-scheme output port
format - formatting string
format-arg - Optional - list of arguments to formatting string

### 3.5.11 'gperf' - perform a perfect hash function

Usage: (gperf name str)
Perform the perfect hash on the input string. This is only useful if you have previously created a gperf program with the `make-gperf` function See Section 3.5.21 [SCM make-gperf], page 40. The `name` you supply here must match the name used to create the program and the string to hash must be one of the strings supplied in the `make-gperf` string list. The result will be a perfect hash index.

See the documentation for `gperf(1GNU)` for more details.

Arguments:
name - name of hash list
str - string to hash

### 3.5.12 'gperf-code' - emit the source of the generated gperf program

Usage: (gperf-code st-name)
Returns the contents of the emitted code, suitable for inclusion in another program. The interface contains the following elements:

'`struct <st-name>_index`'
: containg the fields: `{char const * name, int const id; };`

'`<st-name>_hash()`'
: This is the hashing function with local only scope (static).

'`<st-name>_find()`'
: This is the searching and validation function. The first argument is the string to look up, the second is its length. It returns a pointer to the corresponding `<st-name>_index` entry.

Use this in your template as follows where "`<st-name>`" was set to be "`lookup`":

```
[+ (make-gperf "lookup" (join "\n" (stack "name_list")))
(gperf-code "lookup") +]
void my_fun(char * str) {
struct lookup_index * li = lookup_find(str, strlen(str));
if (li != NULL) printf("%s yields %d\n", str, li->idx);
```

Arguments:
st-name - the name of the gperf hash list

### 3.5.13 'gpl' - GNU General Public License

Usage: (gpl prog-name prefix)
Emit a string that contains the GNU General Public License. It takes two arguments: `prefix` contains the string to start each output line, and `prog_name` contains the name of the program the copyright is about.

Arguments:
prog-name - name of the program under the GPL
prefix - String for starting each output line

### 3.5.14 'hide-email' - convert eaddr to javascript

Usage: (hide-email display eaddr)
Hides an email address as a java scriptlett. The 'mailto:' tag and the email address are coded bytes rather than plain text. They are also broken up.

Arguments:
display - display text
eaddr - email address

### 3.5.15 'html-escape-encode' - encode html special characters

Usage: (html-escape-encode str)
This function will replace replace the characters '&', '<' and '>' characters with the HTML/XML escape-encoded strings ("&", "<", and ">", respectively).

Arguments:
str - string to make substitutions in

### 3.5.16 'in?' - test for string in list

Usage: (in? test-string string-list ...)
Return SCM_BOOL_T if the first argument string is found in one of the entries in the second (list-of-strings) argument.

Arguments:
test-string - string to look for
string-list - list of strings to check

### 3.5.17 'join' - join string list with separator

Usage: (join separator list ...)
With the first argument as the separator string, joins together an a-list of strings into one long string. The list may contain nested lists, partly because you cannot always control that.

Arguments:
separator - string to insert between entries
list - list of strings to join

### 3.5.18 'kr-string' - emit string for K&R C

Usage: (kr-string string)
Reform a string so that, when printed, a K&R C compiler will be able to compile the data and construct a string that contains exactly what the current string contains. Many non-printing characters are replaced with escape sequences. New-lines are replaced with a backslash-n-backslash and newline sequence,

Arguments:
string - string to reformat

### 3.5.19 'lgpl' - GNU Library General Public License

Usage: (lgpl prog_name owner prefix)
Emit a string that contains the GNU Library General Public License. It takes three arguments: `prefix` contains the string to start each output line. `owner` contains the copyright owner. `prog_name` contains the name of the program the copyright is about.

Arguments:
prog_name - name of the program under the LGPL
owner - Grantor of the LGPL
prefix - String for starting each output line

### 3.5.20 'license' - an arbitrary license

Usage: (license lic_name prog_name owner prefix)
Emit a string that contains the named license. The license text is read from a file named, `lic_name`.lic, searching the standard directories. The file contents are used as a format argument to `printf`(3), with `prog_name` and `owner` as the two string formatting arguments. Each output line is automatically prefixed with the string `prefix`.

Arguments:
lic_name - file name of the license
prog_name - name of the licensed program or library
owner - Grantor of the License
prefix - String for starting each output line

### 3.5.21 'make-gperf' - build a perfect hash function program

Usage: (make-gperf name strings ...)
Build a program to perform perfect hashes of a known list of input strings. This function produces no output, but prepares a program named, '`gperf_<name>`' for use by the gperf function See Section 3.5.11 [SCM gperf], page 38.

This program will be obliterated as AutoGen exits. However, you may incorporate the generated hashing function into your C program with commands something like the following:

```
[+ (shellf "sed '/^int main(/,$d;/^#line/d' ${gpdir}/%s.c"
name ) +]
```

where `name` matches the name provided to this `make-perf` function. `gpdir` is the variable used to store the name of the temporary directory used to stash all the files.

Arguments:
name - name of hash list
strings - list of strings to hash

### 3.5.22 'makefile-script' - create makefile script

Usage: (makefile-script text)
This function will take ordinary shell script text and reformat it so that it will work properly inside of a makefile shell script. Not every shell construct can be supported; the intent is to have most ordinary scripts work without much, if any, alteration.

The following transformations are performed on the source text:

1. Trailing whitespace on each line is stripped.
2. Except for the last line, the string, `" ; \\"` is appended to the end of every line that does not end with a backslash, semi-colon, conjunction operator or pipe. Note that this will mutilate multi-line quoted strings, but `make` renders it impossible to use multi-line constructs anyway.
3. If the line ends with a backslash, it is left alone.
4. If the line ends with one of the excepted operators, then a space and backslash is added.
5. The dollar sign character is doubled, unless it immediately precedes an opening parenthesis or the single character make macros '*', '`<`', '`@`', '?' or '%'. Other single character make macros that do not have enclosing parentheses will fail. For shell usage of the `"$@"`, `"$?"` and `"$*"` macros, you must enclose them with curly braces, e.g., `"${?}"`. The ksh construct `$(<command>)` will not work. Though some `make`s accept `${var}` constructs, this function will assume it is for shell interpretation and double the dollar character. You must use `$(var)` for all `make` substitutions.
6. Double dollar signs are replaced by four before the next character is examined.
7. Every line is prefixed with a tab, unless the first line already starts with a tab.
8. The newline character on the last line, if present, is suppressed.
9. Blank lines are stripped.

This function is intended to be used approximately as follows:

```
$(TARGET) : $(DEPENDENCIES)
<+ (out-push-new) +>
....mostly arbitrary shell script text....
<+ (makefile-script (out-pop #t)) +>
```

Arguments:
text - the text of the script

### 3.5.23 'max' - maximum value in list

Usage: (max list ...)
Return the maximum value in the list

Arguments:
list - list of values. Strings are converted to numbers

### 3.5.24 'min' - minimum value in list

Usage: (min list ...)
Return the minimum value in the list

Arguments:
list - list of values. Strings are converted to numbers

### 3.5.25 'prefix' - prefix lines with a string

Usage: (prefix prefix text)
Prefix every line in the second string with the first string.

For example, if the first string is `"# "` and the second contains:

```
two
lines
```

The result string will contain:

```
# two
# lines
```

Arguments:
prefix - string to insert at start of each line
text - multi-line block of text

### 3.5.26 'printf' - format to stdout

Usage: (printf format [ format-arg ... ])
Format a string using arguments from the alist. Write to the standard out port. The result will NOT appear in your output. Use this to print information messages to a template user. Use "(sprintf ...)" to add text to your document.

Arguments:
format - formatting string
format-arg - Optional - list of arguments to formatting string

### 3.5.27 'raw-shell-str' - single quote shell string

Usage: (raw-shell-str string)
Convert the text of the string into a singly quoted string that a normal shell will process into the original string. (It will not do macro expansion later, either.) Contained single quotes become tripled, with the middle quote escaped with a backslash. Normal shells will reconstitute the original string.

**Notice**: some shells will not correctly handle unusual non-printing characters. This routine works for most reasonably conventional ASCII strings.

Arguments:
string - string to transform

### 3.5.28 'shell' - invoke a shell script

Usage: (shell command)
Generate a string by writing the value to a server shell and reading the output back in. The template programmer is responsible for ensuring that it completes within 10 seconds. If it does not, the server will be killed, the output tossed and a new server started.

Arguments:
command - shell command - the result value is stdout

### 3.5.29 'shell-str' - double quote shell string

Usage: (shell-str string)
Convert the text of the string into a double quoted string that a normal shell will process into the original string, almost. It will add the escape character \\ before two special characters to accomplish this: the backslash \\ and double quote ".

**NOTE**: some shells will not correctly handle unusual non-printing characters. This routine works for most reasonably conventional ASCII strings.

**WARNING**:
This function omits the extra backslash in front of a backslash, however, if it is followed by either a backquote or a dollar sign. It must do this because otherwise it would be impossible to protect the dollar sign or backquote from shell evaluation. Consequently, it is not possible to render the strings `"\\$"` or `"\\‘"`. The lesser of two evils.

All others characters are copied directly into the output.

The `sub-shell-str` variation of this routine behaves identically, except that the extra backslash is omitted in front of `"` instead of ‘. You have to think about it. I'm open to suggestions.

Meanwhile, the best way to document is with a detailed output example. If the backslashes make it through the text processing correctly, below you will see what happens with three example strings. The first example string contains a list of quoted `foo`s, the second is the same with a single backslash before the quote characters and the last is with two backslash escapes. Below each is the result of the `raw-shell-str`, `shell-str` and `sub-shell-str` functions.

```
foo[0]           ’’foo’’ ’foo’ "foo" ‘foo‘ $foo
raw-shell-str -> \’\’’foo’\’\’’ ’\’’foo’\’’ "foo" ‘foo‘ $foo’
shell-str     -> "’’foo’’ ’foo’ \"foo\" ‘foo‘ $foo"
sub-shell-str -> ‘’’foo’’ ’foo’ "foo" \‘foo\‘ $foo‘

foo[1]           \’bar\’ \"bar\" \‘bar\‘ \$bar
raw-shell-str -> ’\’\’’bar\’\’’ \"bar\" \‘bar\‘ \$bar’
shell-str     -> "\\’bar\\’ \\\"bar\\\" \‘bar\‘ \$bar"
sub-shell-str -> ‘\\’bar\\’ \"bar\" \\\‘bar\\\‘ \$bar‘

foo[2]           \\’BAZ\\’ \\"BAZ\\" \\‘BAZ\\‘ \\$BAZ
raw-shell-str -> ’\\’\’’BAZ\\’\’’ \\"BAZ\\" \\‘BAZ\\‘ \\$BAZ’
shell-str     -> "\\\\’BAZ\\\\’ \\\\\"BAZ\\\\\" \\\‘BAZ\\\‘ \\\$BAZ"
sub-shell-str -> ‘\\\\’BAZ\\\\’ \\\"BAZ\\\" \\\\\‘BAZ\\\\\‘ \\\$BAZ‘
```

There should be four, three, five and three backslashes for the four examples on the last line, respectively. The next to last line should have four, five, three and three backslashes. If this was not accurately reproduced, take a look at the agen5/test/shell.test test. Notice the backslashes in front of the dollar signs. It goes from zero to one to three for the `"cooked"` string examples.

Arguments:
string - string to transform

### 3.5.30 ‘`shellf`’ - format a string, run shell

Usage: (shellf format [ format-arg ... ])
Format a string using arguments from the alist, then send the result to the shell for interpretation.

Arguments:
format - formatting string
format-arg - Optional - list of arguments to formatting string

### 3.5.31 ‘sprintf’ - format a string

Usage: (sprintf format [ format-arg ... ])
Format a string using arguments from the alist.

Arguments:
format - formatting string
format-arg - Optional - list of arguments to formatting string

### 3.5.32 ‘string-capitalize’ - capitalize a new string

Usage: (string-capitalize str)
Create a new SCM string containing the same text as the original, only all the first letter of each word is upper cased and all other letters are made lower case.

Arguments:
str - input string

### 3.5.33 ‘string-capitalize!’ - capitalize a string

Usage: (string-capitalize! str)
capitalize all the words in an SCM string.

Arguments:
str - input/output string

### 3.5.34 ‘string-contains-eqv?’ - caseless substring

Usage: (*=* text match)
string-contains-eqv?: Test to see if a string contains an equivalent string. ‘equivalent’ means the strings match, but without regard to character case and certain characters are considered ‘equivalent’. Viz., ’-’, ’_’ and ’^’ are equivalent.

Arguments:
text - text to test for pattern
match - pattern/substring to search for

### 3.5.35 ‘string-contains?’ - substring match

Usage: (*==* text match)
string-contains?: Test to see if a string contains a substring. "strstr(3)" will find an address.

Arguments:
text - text to test for pattern
match - pattern/substring to search for

### 3.5.36 ‘string-downcase’ - lower case a new string

Usage: (string-downcase str)
Create a new SCM string containing the same text as the original, only all the upper case letters are changed to lower case.

Arguments:
str - input string

### 3.5.37 ‘`string-downcase!`’ - make a string be lower case

Usage: (string-downcase! str)
Change to lower case all the characters in an SCM string.

Arguments:
str - input/output string

### 3.5.38 ‘`string-end-eqv-match?`’ - caseless regex ending

Usage: (*~ text match)
string-end-eqv-match?: Test to see if a string ends with a pattern. Case is not significant.

Arguments:
text - text to test for pattern
match - pattern/substring to search for

### 3.5.39 ‘`string-end-match?`’ - regex match end

Usage: (*~~ text match)
string-end-match?: Test to see if a string ends with a pattern. Case is significant.

Arguments:
text - text to test for pattern
match - pattern/substring to search for

### 3.5.40 ‘`string-ends-eqv?`’ - caseless string ending

Usage: (*= text match)
string-ends-eqv?: Test to see if a string ends with an equivalent string.

Arguments:
text - text to test for pattern
match - pattern/substring to search for

### 3.5.41 ‘`string-ends-with?`’ - string ending

Usage: (*== text match)
string-ends-with?: Test to see if a string ends with a substring. strcmp(3) returns zero for comparing the string ends.

Arguments:
text - text to test for pattern
match - pattern/substring to search for

### 3.5.42 ‘`string-equals?`’ - string matching

Usage: (== text match)
string-equals?: Test to see if two strings exactly match.

Arguments:
text - text to test for pattern
match - pattern/substring to search for

### 3.5.43 'string-eqv-match?' - caseless regex match

Usage: (~ text match)
string-eqv-match?: Test to see if a string fully matches a pattern. Case is not significant, but any character equivalences must be expressed in your regular expression.

Arguments:
text - text to test for pattern
match - pattern/substring to search for

### 3.5.44 'string-eqv?' - caseless string match

Usage: (= text match)
string-eqv?: Test to see if two strings are equivalent. 'equivalent' means the strings match, but without regard to character case and certain characters are considered 'equivalent'. Viz., '-', '_' and '^' are equivalent. If the arguments are not strings, then the result of the numeric comparison is returned.

This is an overloaded operation. If the arguments are not both strings, then the query is passed through to `scm_num_eq_p()`.

Arguments:
text - text to test for pattern
match - pattern/substring to search for

### 3.5.45 'string-has-eqv-match?' - caseless regex contains

Usage: (*~* text match)
string-has-eqv-match?: Test to see if a string contains a pattern. Case is not significant.

Arguments:
text - text to test for pattern
match - pattern/substring to search for

### 3.5.46 'string-has-match?' - contained regex match

Usage: (*~~* text match)
string-has-match?: Test to see if a string contains a pattern. Case is significant.

Arguments:
text - text to test for pattern
match - pattern/substring to search for

### 3.5.47 'string-match?' - regex match

Usage: (~~ text match)
string-match?: Test to see if a string fully matches a pattern. Case is significant.

Arguments:
text - text to test for pattern
match - pattern/substring to search for

### 3.5.48 'string-start-eqv-match?' - caseless regex start

Usage: (~* text match)
string-start-eqv-match?: Test to see if a string starts with a pattern. Case is not significant.

Arguments:
text - text to test for pattern
match - pattern/substring to search for

### 3.5.49 'string-start-match?' - regex match start

Usage: (~~* text match)
string-start-match?: Test to see if a string starts with a pattern. Case is significant.

Arguments:
text - text to test for pattern
match - pattern/substring to search for

### 3.5.50 'string-starts-eqv?' - caseless string start

Usage: (=* text match)
string-starts-eqv?: Test to see if a string starts with an equivalent string.

Arguments:
text - text to test for pattern
match - pattern/substring to search for

### 3.5.51 'string-starts-with?' - string starting

Usage: (==* text match)
string-starts-with?: Test to see if a string starts with a substring.

Arguments:
text - text to test for pattern
match - pattern/substring to search for

### 3.5.52 'string-substitute' - multiple global replacements

Usage: (string-substitute source match repl)
`match` and `repl` may be either a single string or a list of strings. Either way, they must have the same structure and number of elements. For example, to replace all less than and all greater than characters, do something like this:

```
(string-substitute source
("&"     "<"    ">")
("&amp;" "&lt;" "&gt;"))
```

Arguments:
source - string to transform
match - substring or substring list to be replaced
repl - replacement strings or substrings

### 3.5.53 'string-table-add' - Add an entry to a string table

Usage: (string-table-add st-name str-val)
Check for a duplicate string and, if none, then insert a new string into the string table. In all cases, returns the character index of the beginning of the string in the table.

The returned index can be used in expressions like:

```
string_array + <returned-value>
```

that will yield the address of the first byte of the inserted string. See the '`strtable.test`' AutoGen test for a usage example.

Arguments:
st-name - the name of the array of characters
str-val - the (possibly) new value to add

### 3.5.54 '`string-table-add-ref`' - Add an entry to a string table, get reference

Usage: (string-table-add-ref st-name str-val)
Identical to string-table-add, except the value returned is the string "st-name" '+' and the index returned by string-table-add.

Arguments:
st-name - the name of the array of characters
str-val - the (possibly) new value to add

### 3.5.55 '`string-table-new`' - create a string table

Usage: (string-table-new st-name)
This function will create an array of characters. The companion functions, (See Section 3.5.53 [SCM string-table-add], page 47, and see Section 3.5.6 [SCM emit-string-table], page 36) will insert text and emit the populated table, respectively.

With these functions, it should be much easier to construct structures containing string offsets instead of string pointers. That can be very useful when transmitting, storing or sharing data with different address spaces.

Here is a brief example copied from the strtable.test test:

```
[+ (string-table-new "scribble")
   (out-push-new)
   (define ix 0)
   (define ct 1)  +][+

FOR str IN that was the week that was +][+
  (set! ct (+ ct 1))
  (set! ix (string-table-add "scribble" (get "str")))
+]
    scribble + [+ (. ix) +],[+
ENDFOR  +]
    NULL };
[+ (out-suspend "main")
   (emit-string-table "scribble")
   (ag-fprintf 0 "\nchar const *ap[%d] = {" ct)
   (out-resume "main")
   (out-pop #t) +]
```

Some explanation:

I added the `(out-push-new)` because the string table text is diverted into an output stream named, "scribble" and I want to have the string table emitted before the string table references. The string table references are also emitted inside the `FOR` loop. So, when the

loop is done, the current output is suspended under the name, "main" and the "scribble" table is then emitted into the primary output. (`emit-string-table` inserts its output directly into the current output stream. It does not need to be the last function in an AutoGen macro block.) Next I `ag-fprintf` the array-of-pointer declaration directly into the current output. Finally I restore the "main" output stream and `(out-pop #t)`-it into the main output stream.

Here is the result. Note that duplicate strings are not repeated in the string table:

```
static char const scribble[18] =
    "that\0" "was\0"  "the\0"  "week\0";

char const *ap[7] = {
    scribble + 0,
    scribble + 5,
    scribble + 9,
    scribble + 13,
    scribble + 0,
    scribble + 5,
    NULL };
```

These functions use the global name space `stt-*` in addition to the function names.

Arguments:
st-name - the name of the array of characters

### 3.5.56 'string-table-size' - print the current size of a string table

Usage: (string-table-size st-name)
Returns the current byte count of the string table.

Arguments:
st-name - the name of the array of characters

### 3.5.57 'string->c-name!' - map non-name chars to underscore

Usage: (string->c-name! str)
Change all the graphic characters that are invalid in a C name token into underscores. Whitespace characters are ignored. Any other character type (i.e. non-graphic and non-white) will cause a failure.

Arguments:
str - input/output string

### 3.5.58 'string-tr' - convert characters with new result

Usage: (string-tr source match translation)
This is identical to `string-tr!`, except that it does not over-write the previous value.

Arguments:
source - string to transform
match - characters to be converted
translation - conversion list

### 3.5.59 ‘`string-tr!`’ - convert characters

Usage: (string-tr! source match translation)
This is the same as the `tr(1)` program, except the string to transform is the first argument. The second and third arguments are used to construct mapping arrays for the transformation of the first argument.

It is too bad this little program has so many different and incompatible implementations!

Arguments:
source - string to transform
match - characters to be converted
translation - conversion list

### 3.5.60 ‘`string-upcase`’ - upper case a new string

Usage: (string-upcase str)
Create a new SCM string containing the same text as the original, only all the lower case letters are changed to upper case.

Arguments:
str - input string

### 3.5.61 ‘`string-upcase!`’ - make a string be upper case

Usage: (string-upcase! str)
Change to upper case all the characters in an SCM string.

Arguments:
str - input/output string

### 3.5.62 ‘`sub-shell-str`’ - back quoted (sub-)shell string

Usage: (sub-shell-str string)
This function is substantially identical to `shell-str`, except that the quoting character is ‘ and the "leave the escape alone" character is ".

Arguments:
string - string to transform

### 3.5.63 ‘`sum`’ - sum of values in list

Usage: (sum list ...)
Compute the sum of the list of expressions.

Arguments:
list - list of values. Strings are converted to numbers

### 3.5.64 ‘`version-compare`’ - compare two version numbers

Usage: (version-compare op v1 v2)
Converts v1 and v2 strings into 64 bit values and returns the result of running ’op’ on those values. It assumes that the version is a 1 to 4 part dot-separated series of numbers. Suffixes like, "5pre4" or "5-pre4" will be interpreted as two numbers. The first number ("5" in this case) will be decremented and the number after the "pre" will be added to 0xC000. (Unless your platform is unable to support 64 bit integer arithmetic. Then it will be added to 0xC0.) Consequently, these yield true:

```
(version-compare > "5.8.5"       "5.8.5-pre4")
(version-compare > "5.8.5-pre10" "5.8.5-pre4")
```

Arguments:
op - comparison operator
v1 - first version
v2 - compared-to version

## 3.6 AutoGen Native Macros

This section describes the various AutoGen natively defined macros. Unlike the Scheme functions, some of these macros are "block macros" with a scope that extends through a terminating macro. Block macros must not overlap. That is to say, a block macro started within the scope of an encompassing block macro must have its matching end macro appear before the encompassing block macro is either ended or subdivided.

The block macros are these:

`CASE` This macro has scope through the `ESAC` macro. The scope is subdivided by `SELECT` macros. You must have at least one `SELECT` macro.

`DEFINE` This macro has scope through the `ENDDEF` macro. The defined user macro can never be a block macro. This macro is extracted from the template *before* the template is processed. Consequently, you cannot select a definition based on context. You can, however, place them all at the end of the file.

`FOR` This macro has scope through the `ENDFOR` macro.

`IF` This macro has scope through the `ENDIF` macro. The scope may be subdivided by `ELIF` and `ELSE` macros. Obviously, there may be only one `ELSE` macro and it must be the last of these subdivisions.

`INCLUDE` This macro has the scope of the included file. It is a block macro in the sense that the included file must not contain any incomplete block macros.

`WHILE` This macro has scope through the `ENDWHILE` macro.

### 3.6.1 AutoGen Macro Syntax

The general syntax is:

```
[ { <native-macro-name> | <user-defined-name> } ] [ <arg> ... ]
```

The syntax for `<arg>` depends on the particular macro, but is generally a full expression (see Section 3.3 [expression syntax], page 22). Here are the exceptions to that general rule:

1. `INVOKE` macros, implicit or explicit, must be followed by a list of name/string value pairs. The string values are *simple expressions*, as described above.

   That is, the `INVOKE` syntax is one of these two:

   ```
   <user-macro-name> [ <name> [ = <expression> ] ... ]

   INVOKE <name-expression> [ <name> [ = <expression> ] ... ]
   ```

2. AutoGen FOR macros must be in one of three forms:

```
FOR <name> [ <separator-string> ]

FOR <name> (...Scheme expression list)

FOR <name> IN <string-entry> [ ... ]
```

where:

'<name>' must be a simple name.

'<separator-string>'
is inserted between copies of the enclosed block. Do not try to use "IN" as your separator string. It won't work.

'<string-entry>'
is an entry in a list of strings. "<name>" is assigned each value from the "IN" list before expanding the FOR block.

'(...Scheme expression list)'
is expected to contain one or more of the for-from, for-to, for-by, and for-sep functions. (See Section 3.6.14 [FOR], page 55, and Section 3.4 [AutoGen Functions], page 25)

The first two forms iterate over the FOR block if <name> is found in the AutoGen values. The last form will create the AutoGen value named <name>.

3. AutoGen DEFINE macros must be followed by a simple name. Anything after that is ignored. Consequently, that "comment space" may be used to document any named values the macro expects to have set up as arguments. See Section 3.6.5 [DEFINE], page 53.
4. The AutoGen COMMENT, ELSE, ESAC and the END* macros take no arguments and ignore everything after the macro name (e.g. see Section 3.6.3 [COMMENT], page 53)

### 3.6.2 CASE - Select one of several template blocks

The arguments are evaluated and converted to a string, if necessary. A simple name will be interpreted as an AutoGen value name and its value will be used by the SELECT macros (see the example below and the expression evaluation function, see Section 3.6.13 [EXPR], page 55). The scope of the macro is up to the matching ESAC macro. Within the scope of a CASE, this string is matched against case selection macros. There are sixteen match macros that are derived from four different ways matches may be performed, plus an "always true", "true if the AutoGen value was found", and "true if no AutoGen value was found" matches. The codes for the nineteen match macros are formed as follows:

1. Must the match start matching from the beginning of the string? If not, then the match macro code starts with an asterisk (*).
2. Must the match finish matching at the end of the string? If not, then the match macro code ends with an asterisk (*).
3. Is the match a pattern match or a string comparison? If a comparison, use an equal sign (=). If a pattern match, use a tilde (~).
4. Is the match case sensitive? If alphabetic case is important, double the tilde or equal sign.

5. Do you need a default match when none of the others match? Use a single asterisk (`*`).
6. Do you need to distinguish between an empty string value and a value that was not found? Use the non-existence test (`!E`) before testing a full match against an empty string (`== ''`). There is also an existence test (`+E`), more for symmetry than for practical use.

For example:

```
[+ CASE <full-expression> +]
[+ ~~*  "[Tt]est" +]reg exp must match at start, not at end
[+ ==   "TeSt"    +]a full-string, case sensitive compare
[+ =    "TEST"    +]a full-string, case insensitive compare
[+ !E             +]not exists - matches if no AutoGen value found
[+ ==   ""        +]expression yielded a zero-length string
[+ +E             +]exists - matches if there is any value result
[+ *              +]always match - no testing
[+ ESAC +]
```

`<full-expression>` (see Section 3.3 [expression syntax], page 22) may be any expression, including the use of apply-codes and value-names. If the expression yields a number, it is converted to a decimal string.

These case selection codes have also been implemented as Scheme expression functions using the same codes. They are documented in this texi doc as "string-*?" predicates (see Section 3.5 [Common Functions], page 35).

### 3.6.3 COMMENT - A block of comment to be ignored

This function can be specified by the user, but there will never be a situation where it will be invoked at emit time. The macro is actually removed from the internal representation.

If the native macro name code is `#`, then the entire macro function is treated as a comment and ignored.

```
[+ # say what you want, but no '+' before any ']' chars +]
```

### 3.6.4 DEBUG - Print debug message to trace output

If the tracing level is at `"debug-message"` or above (see Section 5.17 [autogen trace], page 66), this macro prints a debug message to trace output. This message is not evaluated. This macro can also be used to set useful debugger breakpoints. By inserting [+DEBUG n+] into your template, you can set a debugger breakpoint on the #n case element below (in the AutoGen source) and step through the processing of interesting parts of your template.

To be useful, you have to have access to the source tree where autogen was built and the template being processed. The definitions are also helpful, but not crucial. Please contact the author if you think you might actually want to use this.

### 3.6.5 DEFINE - Define a user AutoGen macro

This function will define a new macro. You must provide a name for the macro. You do not specify any arguments, though the invocation may specify a set of name/value pairs that are to be active during the processing of the macro.

```
[+ define foo +]
```

```
... macro body with macro functions ...
[+ enddef +]
... [+ foo bar='raw text' baz=<<text expression>> +]
```

Once the macro has been defined, this new macro can be invoked by specifying the macro name as the first token after the start macro marker. Alternatively, you may make the invocation explicitly invoke a defined macro by specifying `INVOKE` (see Section 3.6.17 [INVOKE], page 57) in the macro invocation. If you do that, the macro name can be computed with an expression that gets evaluated every time the INVOKE macro is encountered.

Any remaining text in the macro invocation will be used to create new name/value pairs that only persist for the duration of the processing of the macro. The expressions are evaluated the same way basic expressions are evaluated. See Section 3.3 [expression syntax], page 22.

The resulting definitions are handled much like regular definitions, except:

1. The values may not be compound. That is, they may not contain nested name/value pairs.
2. The bindings go away when the macro is complete.
3. The name/value pairs are separated by whitespace instead of semi-colons.
4. Sequences of strings are not concatenated.

> **NB:** The macro is extracted from the template as the template is scanned. You cannot conditionally define a macro by enclosing it in an `IF`/`ENDIF` (see Section 3.6.15 [IF], page 56) macro pair. If you need to dynamically select the format of a `DEFINE`d macro, then put the flavors into separate template files that simply define macros. `INCLUDE` (see Section 3.6.16 [INCLUDE], page 56) the appropriate template when you have computed which you need.

Due to this, it is acceptable and even a good idea to place all the `DEFINE` macros at the end of the template. That puts the main body of the template at the beginning of the file.

### 3.6.6 ELIF - Alternate Conditional Template Block

This macro must only appear after an `IF` function, and before any associated `ELSE` or `ENDIF` functions. It denotes the start of an alternate template block for the `IF` function. Its expression argument is evaluated as are the arguments to `IF`. For a complete description See Section 3.6.15 [IF], page 56.

### 3.6.7 ELSE - Alternate Template Block

This macro must only appear after an `IF` function, and before the associated `ENDIF` function. It denotes the start of an alternate template block for the `IF` function. For a complete description See Section 3.6.15 [IF], page 56.

### 3.6.8 ENDDEF - Ends a macro definition.

This macro ends the `DEFINE` function template block. For a complete description See Section 3.6.5 [DEFINE], page 53.

### 3.6.9 ENDFOR - Terminates the `FOR` function template block

This macro ends the `FOR` function template block. For a complete description See Section 3.6.14 [FOR], page 55.

### 3.6.10 ENDIF - Terminate the IF Template Block

This macro ends the IF function template block. For a complete description See Section 3.6.15 [IF], page 56.

### 3.6.11 ENDWHILE - Terminate the WHILE Template Block

This macro ends the WHILE function template block. For a complete description See Section 3.6.20 [WHILE], page 57.

### 3.6.12 ESAC - Terminate the CASE Template Block

This macro ends the CASE function template block. For a complete description, See Section 3.6.2 [CASE], page 52.

### 3.6.13 EXPR - Evaluate and emit an Expression

This macro does not have a name to cause it to be invoked explicitly, though if a macro starts with one of the apply codes or one of the simple expression markers, then an expression macro is inferred. The result of the expression evaluation (see Section 3.3 [expression syntax], page 22) is written to the current output.

### 3.6.14 FOR - Emit a template block multiple times

This macro has a slight variation on the standard syntax:

```
FOR <value-name> [ <separator-string> ]

FOR <value-name> (...Scheme expression list)

FOR <value-name> IN "string" [ ... ]
```

Other than for the last form, the first macro argument must be the name of an AutoGen value. If there is no value associated with the name, the FOR template block is skipped entirely. The scope of the FOR macro extends to the corresponding ENDFOR macro. The last form will create an array of string values named <value-name> that only exists within the context of this FOR loop. With this form, in order to use a separator-string, you must code it into the end of the template block using the (last-for?) predicate function (see Section 3.4.22 [SCM last-for?], page 29).

If there are any arguments after the value-name, the initial characters are used to determine the form. If the first character is either a semi-colon (;) or an opening parenthesis (), then it is presumed to be a Scheme expression containing the FOR macro specific functions for-from, for-by, for-to, and/or for-sep. See Section 3.4 [AutoGen Functions], page 25. If it consists of an 'i' an 'n' and separated by white space from more text, then the FOR x IN form is processed. Otherwise, the remaining text is presumed to be a string for inserting between each iteration of the loop. This string will be emitted one time less than the number of iterations of the loop. That is, it is emitted after each loop, excepting for the last iteration.

If the from/by/to functions are invoked, they will specify which copies of the named value are to be processed. If there is no copy of the named value associated with a particular index, the FOR template block will be instantiated anyway. The template must use methods

for detecting missing definitions and emitting default text. In this fashion, you can insert entries from a sparse or non-zero based array into a dense, zero based array.

**NB:** the `for-from`, `for-to`, `for-by` and `for-sep` functions are disabled outside of the context of the `FOR` macro. Likewise, the `first-for`, `last-for` and `for-index` functions are disabled outside of the range of a `FOR` block.

**Also:** the `<value-name>` must be a single level name, not a compound name (see Section 3.2 [naming values], page 22).

```
[+FOR var (for-from 0) (for-to <number>) (for-sep ",") +]
... text with various substitutions ...[+
ENDFOR var+]
```

this will repeat the `... text with various substitutions ...` <number>+1 times. Each repetition, except for the last, will have a comma `,` after it.

```
[+FOR var ",\n" +]
... text with various substitutions ...[+
ENDFOR var +]
```

This will do the same thing, but only for the index values of `var` that have actually been defined.

### 3.6.15 IF - Conditionally Emit a Template Block

Conditional block. Its arguments are evaluated (see Section 3.6.13 [EXPR], page 55) and if the result is non-zero or a string with one or more bytes, then the condition is true and the text from that point until a matched `ELIF`, `ELSE` or `ENDIF` is emitted. `ELIF` introduces a conditional alternative if the `IF` clause evaluated FALSE and `ELSE` introduces an unconditional alternative.

```
[+IF <full-expression> +]
emit things that are for the true condition[+

ELIF <full-expression-2> +]
emit things that are true maybe[+

ELSE "This may be a comment" +]
emit this if all but else fails[+

ENDIF "This may *also* be a comment" +]
```

`<full-expression>` may be any expression described in the `EXPR` expression function, including the use of apply-codes and value-names. If the expression yields an empty string, it is interpreted as *false*.

### 3.6.16 INCLUDE - Read in and emit a template block

The entire contents of the named file is inserted at this point. The contents of the file are processed for macro expansion. The arguments are eval-ed, so you may compute the name of the file to be included. The included file must not contain any incomplete function blocks. Function blocks are template text beginning with any of the macro functions '`CASE`', '`DEFINE`', '`FOR`', '`IF`' and '`WHILE`'; extending through their respective terminating macro functions.

### 3.6.17 INVOKE - Invoke a User Defined Macro

User defined macros may be invoked explicitly or implicitly. If you invoke one implicitly, the macro must begin with the name of the defined macro. Consequently, this may **not** be a computed value. If you explicitly invoke a user defined macro, the macro begins with the macro name `INVOKE` followed by a *basic expression* that must yield a known user defined macro. A macro name _must_ be found, or AutoGen will issue a diagnostic and exit.

Arguments are passed to the invoked macro by name. The text following the macro name must consist of a series of names each of which is followed by an equal sign (`=`) and a *basic expression* that yields a string.

The string values may contain template macros that are parsed the first time the macro is processed and evaluated again every time the macro is evaluated.

### 3.6.18 SELECT - Selection block for CASE function

This macro selects a block of text by matching an expression against the sample text expression evaluated in the `CASE` macro. See Section 3.6.2 [CASE], page 52.

You do not specify a `SELECT` macro with the word "select". Instead, you must use one of the 19 match operators described in the `CASE` macro description.

### 3.6.19 UNKNOWN - Either a user macro or a value name.

The macro text has started with a name not known to AutoGen. If, at run time, it turns out to be the name of a defined macro, then that macro is invoked. If it is not, then it is a conditional expression that is evaluated only if the name is defined at the time the macro is invoked.

You may not specify `UNKNOWN` explicitly.

### 3.6.20 WHILE - Conditionally loop over a Template Block

Conditionally repeated block. Its arguments are evaluated (see Section 3.6.13 [EXPR], page 55) and as long as the result is non-zero or a string with one or more bytes, then the condition is true and the text from that point until a matched `ENDWHILE` is emitted.

```
[+WHILE <full-expression> +]
emit things that are for the true condition[+

ENDWHILE +]
```

`<full-expression>` may be any expression described in the `EXPR` expression function, including the use of apply-codes and value-names. If the expression yields an empty string, it is interpreted as *false*.

## 3.7 Redirecting Output

AutoGen provides a means for redirecting the template output to different files or, in '`M4`' parlance, to various diversions. It is accomplished by providing a set of Scheme functions named `out-*` (see Section 3.4 [AutoGen Functions], page 25).

'`out-push-new` (see Section 3.4.35 [SCM out-push-new], page 32)'

This allows you to logically "push" output files onto a stack. If you supply a string name, then a file by that name is created to hold the output. If you do

not supply a name, then the text is written to a scratch pad and retrieved by passing a "`#t`" argument to the `out-pop` (see Section 3.4.33 [SCM out-pop], page 31) function.

'`out-pop` (see Section 3.4.33 [SCM out-pop], page 31)'
This function closes the current output file and resumes output to the next one in the stack. At least one output must have been pushed onto the output stack with the `out-push-new` (see Section 3.4.35 [SCM out-push-new], page 32) function. If "`#t`" is passed in as an argument, then the entire contents of the diversion (or file) is returned.

'`out-suspend` (see Section 3.4.37 [SCM out-suspend], page 32)'
This function does not close the current output, but instead sets it aside for resumption by the given name with `out-resume`. The current output must have been pushed on the output queue with `out-push-new` (see Section 3.4.35 [SCM out-push-new], page 32).

'`out-resume` (see Section 3.4.36 [SCM out-resume], page 32)'
This will put a named file descriptor back onto the top of stack so that it becomes the current output again.

'`out-switch` (see Section 3.4.38 [SCM out-switch], page 32)'
This closes the current output and creates a new file, purging any preexisting one. This is a shortcut for "pop" followed by "push", but this can also be done at the base level.

'`out-move` (see Section 3.4.31 [SCM out-move], page 31)'
Renames the current output file without closing it.

There are also several functions for determining the output status. See Section 3.4 [AutoGen Functions], page 25.

# 4 Augmenting AutoGen Features

AutoGen was designed to be simple to enhance. You can do it by providing shell commands, Guile/Scheme macros or callout functions that can be invoked as a Guile macro. Here is how you do these.

## 4.1 Shell Output Commands

Shell commands are run inside of a server process. This means that, unlike '`make`', context is kept from one command to the next. Consequently, you can define a shell function in one place inside of your template and invoke it in another. You may also store values in shell variables for later reference. If you load functions from a file containing shell functions, they will remain until AutoGen exits.

If your shell script should determine that AutoGen should stop processing, the recommended method for stopping AutoGen is:

```
die "some error text"
```

That is a shell function added by AutoGen. It will send a SIGTERM to autogen and exit from the "persistent" shell.

## 4.2 Guile Macros

Guile also maintains context from one command to the next. This means you may define functions and variables in one place and reference them elsewhere. You also may load Guile macro definitions from a Scheme file by using the `--load-scheme` command line option (see Section 5.7 [autogen load-scheme], page 64). Beware, however, that the AutoGen specific scheme functions have not been loaded at this time, so though you may define functions that reference them, do not invoke the AutoGen functions at this time.

If your Scheme script should determine that AutoGen should stop processing, the recommended method for stopping AutoGen is:

```
(error "some error text")
```

## 4.3 Guile Callout Functions

Callout functions must be registered with Guile to work. This can be accomplished either by putting your routines into a shared library that contains a `void scm_init( void )` routine that registers these routines, or by building them into AutoGen.

To build them into AutoGen, you must place your routines in the source directory and name the files '`exp*.c`'. You also must have a stylized comment that '`getdefs`' can find that conforms to the following:

```
/*=gfunc <function-name>
 *
 *  what:    <short one-liner>
 *  general_use:
 *  string:  <invocation-name-string>
 *  exparg:  <name>, <description> [, ['optional'] [, 'list']]
 *  doc:     A long description telling people how to use
```

```
 *           this function.
=*/
SCM
ag_scm_<function-name>( SCM arg_name[, ...] )
{ <code> }
```

'`gfunc`' You must have this exactly thus.

'`<function-name>`'
This must follow C syntax for variable names

'`<short one-liner>`'
This should be about a half a line long. It is used as a subsection title in this document.

'`general_use:`'
You must supply this unless you are an AutoGen maintainer and are writing a function that queries or modifies the state of AutoGen.

'`<invocation-name-string>`'
Normally, the `function-name` string will be transformed into a reasonable invocation name. However, that is not always true. If the result does not suit your needs, then supply an alternate string.

'`exparg:`' You must supply one for each argument to your function. All optional arguments must be last. The last of the optional arguments may be a list, if you choose.

'`doc:`' Please say something meaningful.

'`[, ...]`' Do not actually specify an ANSI ellipsis here. You must provide for all the arguments you specified with `exparg`.

See the Guile documentation for more details. More information is also available in a large comment at the beginning of the '`agen5/snarf.tpl`' template file.

## 4.4 AutoGen Macros

There are two kinds those you define yourself and AutoGen native. The user-defined macros may be defined in your templates or loaded with the `--lib-template` option (See Section 3.6.5 [DEFINE], page 53 and Section 5.4 [autogen lib-template], page 63).

As for AutoGen native macros, do not add any. It is easy to do, but I won't like it. The basic functions needed to accomplish looping over and selecting blocks of text have proved to be sufficient over a period of several years. New text transformations can be easily added via any of the AutoGen extension methods, as discussed above.

# 5 Invoking autogen

AutoGen creates text files from templates using external definitions. The definitions file ('<def-file>') can be specified with the 'definitions' option or as the command argument, but not both. Omitting it or specifying '-' will result in reading definitions from standard input.

The output file names are based on the template, but generally use the base name of the definition file. If standard in is read for the definitions, then 'stdin' will be used for that base name. The suffixes to the base name are gotten from the template. However, the template file may specify the entire output file name. The generated files are always created in the current directory. If you need to place output in an alternate directory, 'cd' to that directory and use the '–templ_dirs' option to search the original directory.

'loop-limit' is used in debugging to stop runaway expansions.

This chapter was generated by **AutoGen**, the aginfo template and the option descriptions for the `autogen` program. It documents the autogen usage text and option meanings.

This software is released under the GNU General Public License.

## 5.1 autogen usage help (-?)

This is the automatically generated usage text for autogen:

```
autogen (GNU AutoGen) - The Automated Program Generator - Ver. 5.9.5
USAGE:  autogen [ -<flag> [<val>] | --<name>[{=| }<val>] ]... [ <def-file> ]
  Flg Arg Option-Name    Description
   -L Str templ-dirs     Template search directory list
                                - may appear multiple times
   -T Str override-tpl   Override template file
                                - may not be preset
   -l Str lib-template   Library template file
                                - may appear multiple times
   -b Str base-name      Base name for output file(s)
                                - may not be preset
      Str definitions    Definitions input file
                                - disabled as --no-definitions
                                - enabled by default
                                - may not be preset
   -S Str load-scheme    Scheme code file to load
   -F Str load-functions Load scheme function library
   -s Str skip-suffix    Omit the file with this suffix
                                - may not be preset
                                - may appear multiple times
   -o opt select-suffix  specify this output suffix
                                - may not be preset
                                - may appear multiple times
      no  source-time    set mod times to latest source
                                - disabled as --no-source-time
   -m no  no-fmemopen    Do not use in-mem streams
```

```
      Str equate         characters considered equivalent
      no  writable       Allow output files to be writable
                                - disabled as --not-writable
                                - may not be preset

The following options are often useful while debugging new templates:

  Flg Arg Option-Name    Description
      Num loop-limit     Limit on increment loops
                                 is scalable with a suffix: k/K/m/M/g/G/t/T
                                 it must lie in one of the ranges:
                                 -1 exactly, or
                                 1 to 16777216
   -t Num timeout        Time limit for servers
                                 it must lie in the range: 0 to 3600
      KWd trace          tracing level of detail
      Str trace-out      tracing output file or filter

These options can be used to control what gets processed
in the definitions files and template files.

  Flg Arg Option-Name    Description
   -D Str define         name to add to definition list
                                - may appear multiple times
   -U Str undefine       definition list removal pattern
                                - an alternate for define

version and help options:

  Flg Arg Option-Name    Description
   -v opt version        Output version information and exit
   -? no  help           Display usage information and exit
   -! no  more-help      Extended usage information passed thru pager
   -u no  usage          Abbreviated usage to stdout
   -> opt save-opts      Save the option state to a config file
   -< Str load-opts      Load options from a config file
                                - disabled as --no-load-opts
                                - may appear multiple times

Options are specified by doubled hyphens and their name
or by a single hyphen and the flag character.

AutoGen creates text files from templates using external definitions.

The following option preset mechanisms are supported:
 - reading file /dev/null
 - reading file /home/bkorb/ag/ag/agen5/.autogenrc
```

```
 - examining environment variables named AUTOGEN_*

The valid "trace" option keywords are:
  nothing       debug-message server-shell  templates     block-macros
  expressions   everything
  or an integer between 0 and 6

The definitions file (‘<def-file>’) can be specified with the
‘definitions’ option or as the command argument, but not both.
Omitting it or specifying ‘-’ will result in reading definitions from
standard input.

The output file names are based on the template, but generally use the
base name of the definition file.  If standard in is read for the
definitions, then ‘stdin’ will be used for that base name.  The
suffixes to the base name are gotten from the template.  However, the
template file may specify the entire output file name.  The generated
files are always created in the current directory.  If you need to
place output in an alternate directory, ‘cd’ to that directory and use
the ‘--templ_dirs’ option to search the original directory.

‘loop-limit’ is used in debugging to stop runaway expansions.

please send bug reports to:  autogen-users@lists.sourceforge.net
```

## 5.2 templ-dirs option (-L)

This is the “template search directory list” option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- may appear an unlimited number of times.

Add a directory to the list of directories to search when opening a template, either as the primary template or an included one. The last entry has the highest priority in the search list. That is to say, they are searched in reverse order.

## 5.3 override-tpl option (-T)

This is the “override template file” option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- may not be preset with environment variables or in initialization (rc) files.

Definition files specify the standard template that is to be expanded. This option will override that name and expand a different template.

## 5.4 lib-template option (-l)

This is the “library template file” option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- may appear an unlimited number of times.

DEFINE macros are saved from this template file for use in processing the main macro file. Template text aside from the DEFINE macros is is ignored.

## 5.5 base-name option (-b)

This is the "base name for output file(s)" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- may not be preset with environment variables or in initialization (rc) files.

A template may specify the exact name of the output file. Normally, it does not. Instead, the name is composed of the base name of the definitions file with suffixes appended. This option will override the base name derived from the definitions file name. This is required if there is no definitions file and advisable if definitions are being read from stdin. If the definitions are being read from standard in, the base name defaults to '`stdin`'. Any leading directory components in the name will be silently removed. If you wish the output file to appear in a particular directory, it is recommended that you "cd" into that directory first, or use directory names in the format specification for the output suffix lists, See Section 3.1 [pseudo macro], page 20.

## 5.6 definitions option

This is the "definitions input file" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- is enabled by default.
- may not be preset with environment variables or in initialization (rc) files.

Use this argument to specify the input definitions file with a command line option. If you do not specify this option, then there must be a command line argument that specifies the file, even if only to specify stdin with a hyphen (`-`). Specify, `--no-definitions` when you wish to process a template without any active AutoGen definitions.\n

## 5.7 load-scheme option (-S)

This is the "scheme code file to load" option. Use this option to pre-load Scheme scripts into the Guile interpreter before template processing begins. Please note that the AutoGen specific functions are not loaded until after argument processing. So, though they may be specified in lambda functions you define, they may not be invoked until after option processing is complete.

## 5.8 load-functions option (-F)

This is the "load scheme function library" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- must be compiled in by defining `HAVE_DLOPEN` during the compilation.

This option is used to load Guile-scheme functions. The automatically called initialization routine `scm_init` must be used to register these routines or data. This routine

can be generated by using the following command and the 'snarf.tpl' template. Read the introductory comment in 'snarf.tpl' to see what the 'getdefs(1AG)' comment must contain.

First, create a config file for `getdefs`, and then invoke `getdefs` loading that file:

```
cat > getdefs.cfg <<EOF
subblock    exparg=arg_name,arg_desc,arg_optional,arg_list
defs-to-get gfunc
template    snarf
srcfile
linenum
assign      group = name_of_some_group
assign      init  = _init
EOF

getdefs load=getdefs.cfg <<source-file-list>>
```

Note, however, that your functions must be named:

```
name_of_some_group_scm_<<function_name>>(...)
```

so you may wish to use a shorter group name.

## 5.9 skip-suffix option (-s)

This is the "omit the file with this suffix" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- may appear an unlimited number of times.
- may not be preset with environment variables or in initialization (rc) files.

Occasionally, it may not be desirable to produce all of the output files specified in the template. (For example, only the '`.h`' header file, but not the '`.c`' program text.) To do this specify `--skip-suffix=c` on the command line.

## 5.10 select-suffix option (-o)

This is the "specify this output suffix" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- may appear an unlimited number of times.
- may not be preset with environment variables or in initialization (rc) files.

If you wish to override the suffix specifications in the template, you can use one or more copies of this option. See the suffix specification in the Section 3.1 [pseudo macro], page 20 section of the info doc.

## 5.11 source-time option

This is the "set mod times to latest source" option. If you stamp your output files with the 'DNE' macro output, then your output files will always be different, even if the content has not really changed. If you use this option, then the modification time of the output files will change only if the input files change. This will help reduce unneeded builds.

## 5.12 no-fmemopen option (-m)

This is the "do not use in-mem streams" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- must be compiled in by defining `ENABLE_FMEMOPEN` during the compilation.

If the local C library supports `"fopencookie(3GNU)"`, or `"funopen(3BSD)"` then AutoGen prefers to use in-memory stream buffer opens instead of anonymous files. This may lead to problems if there is a shortage of virtual memory. If, for a particular application, you run out of memory, then specify this option. This is unlikely in a modern virtual memory environment.

## 5.13 equate option

This is the "characters considered equivalent" option. This option will alter the list of characters considered equivalent. The default are the three characters, `"_-^"`. (The last is conventional on a Tandem/HP-NonStop, and I used to do a lot of work on Tandems.)

## 5.14 writable option

This is the "allow output files to be writable" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- may not be preset with environment variables or in initialization (rc) files.

This option will leave output files writable. Normally, output files are read-only.

## 5.15 loop-limit option

This is the "limit on increment loops" option. This option prevents runaway loops. For example, if you accidentally specify, `"FOR x (for-from 1) (for-to -1) (for-by 1)"`, it will take a long time to finish. If you do have more than 256 entries in tables, you will need to specify a new limit with this option.

## 5.16 timeout option (-t)

This is the "time limit for servers" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- must be compiled in by defining `SHELL_ENABLED` during the compilation.

AutoGen works with a shell server process. Most normal commands will complete in less than 10 seconds. If, however, your commands need more time than this, use this option.

The valid range is 0 to 3600 seconds (1 hour). Zero will disable the server time limit.

## 5.17 trace option

This is the "tracing level of detail" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- This option takes a keyword as its argument. The argument sets an enumeration value that can be tested by comparing the option value macro (OPT_VALUE_TRACE). The available keywords are:

```
nothing       debug-message server-shell
templates     block-macros  expressions
everything
```

This option will cause AutoGen to display a trace of its template processing. There are six levels, each level including messages from the previous levels:

'`nothing`' Does no tracing at all (default)

'`debug-message`'
Print messages from the "DEBUG" AutoGen macro (see Section 3.6.4 [DEBUG], page 53).

'`server-shell`'
Traces all input and output to the server shell. This includes a shell "independent" initialization script about 30 lines long. Its output is discarded and not inserted into any template.

'`templates`'
Traces the invocation of `DEFINE`d macros and `INCLUDE`s

'`block-macros`'
Traces all block macros. The above, plus `IF`, `FOR`, `CASE` and `WHILE`.

'`expressions`'
Displays the results of expression evaluations.

'`everything`'
Displays the invocation of every AutoGen macro, even `TEXT` macros (i.e. the text outside of macro quotes). Additionally, if you rebuild the "expr.ini" file with debugging enabled, then all calls to AutoGen defined scheme functions will also get logged:

```
cd ${top_builddir}/agen5
DEBUG_ENABLED=true bash bootstrap.dir expr.ini
make CFLAGS='-g -DDEBUG_ENABLED=1'
```

Be aware tha tyou cannot rebuild this source in this way without first having installed the `autogen` executable in your search path. Because of this, "expr.ini" is in the distributed source list, and not in the dependencies.

## 5.18 trace-out option

This is the "tracing output file or filter" option. The output specified may be either a file name, or, if the option argument begins with the `pipe` operator (`|`), a command that will receive the tracing output as standard in. For example, `--traceout='| less'` will run the trace output through the `less` program.

## 5.19 show-defs option

This is the "show the definition tree" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- must be compiled in by defining `DEBUG_ENABLED` during the compilation.
- may not be preset with environment variables or in initialization (rc) files.

This will print out the complete definition tree before processing the template.

## 5.20 define option (-D)

This is the "name to add to definition list" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- may appear an unlimited number of times.

The AutoGen define names are used for the following purposes:

1. Sections of the AutoGen definitions may be enabled or disabled by using C-style #ifdef and #ifndef directives.
2. When defining a value for a name, you may specify the index for a particular value. That index may be a literal value, a define option or a value #define-d in the definitions themselves.
3. The name of a file may be prefixed with `$NAME/`. The `$NAME` part of the name string will be replaced with the define-d value for `NAME`.
4. When AutoGen is finished loading the definitions, the defined values are exported to the environment with, `putenv(3)`. These values can then be used in shell scripts with `${NAME}` references and in templates with `(getenv "NAME")`.
5. While processing a template, you may specify an index to retrieve a specific value. That index may also be a define-d value.

## 5.21 undefine option (-U)

This is the "definition list removal pattern" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- may appear an unlimited number of times.
- may not be preset with environment variables or in initialization (rc) files.

Just like 'C', AutoGen uses `#ifdef/#ifndef` preprocessing directives. This option will cause the matching names to be removed from the list of defined values.

# 6 Configuring and Installing

## 6.1 Configuring AutoGen

AutoGen is configured and built using Libtool, Automake and Autoconf. Consequently, you can install it wherever you wish using the various '`--prefix`' options. To the various configuration options supplied by these tools, AutoGen adds a few of its own:

'`--disable-shell`'

AutoGen is now capable of acting as a CGI forms server, See Section 6.2 [AutoGen CGI], page 70. As such, it will gather its definitions using either '`GET`' or '`POST`' methods. All you need to do is have a template named '`cgi.tpl`' handy or specify a different one with a command line option.

However, doing this without disabling the server shell brings considerable risk. If you were to pass user input to a script that contained, say, the classic `"‘‘rm -rf /‘’"`, you might have a problem. This configuration option will cause shell template commands to simply return the command string as the result. No mistakes. Much safer. Strongly recommended. The default is to have server shell scripting enabled.

Disabling the shell will have some build side effects, too.

- Many of the make check tests will fail, since they assume a working server shell.
- The getdefs and columns programs are not built. The options are distributed as definition files and they cannot be expanded with a shell-disabled AutoGen.
- Similarly, the documentation cannot be regenerated because the documentation templates depend on subshell functionality.

'`--enable-debug`'

Turning on AutoGen debugging enables very detailed inspection of the input definitions and monitoring shell script processing. These options are not particularly useful to anyone not directly involved in maintaining AutoGen. If you do choose to enable AutoGen debugging, be aware that the usage page was generated without these options, so when the build process reaches the documentation rebuild, there will be a failure. '`cd`' into the '`agen5`' build directory, '`make`' the '`autogen.texi`' file and all will be well thereafter.

'`--with-regex-header`'
'`--with-header-path`'
'`--with-regex-lib`'

These three work together to specify how to compile with and link to a particular POSIX regular expression library. The value for '`--with-regex-header=value`' must be the name of the relevant header file. The AutoGen sources will attempt to include that source with a `#include <value>` C preprocessing statement. The `path` from the '`--with-header-path=path`' will be added to `CPPFLAGS` as '`-Ipath`'. The `lib-specs` from '`--with-regex-lib=lib-specs`' will be added to `LDFLAGS` without any adornment.

## 6.2 AutoGen as a CGI server

AutoGen is now capable of acting as a CGI forms server. It behaves as a CGI server if the definitions input is from stdin and the environment variable `REQUEST_METHOD` is defined and set to either `"GET"` or `"POST"`. If set to anything else, AutoGen will exit with a failure message. When set to one of those values, the CGI data will be converted to AutoGen definitions (see Chapter 2 [Definitions File], page 6) and the template named `"cgi.tpl"` will be processed.

This works by including the name of the real template to process in the form data and having the `"cgi.tpl"` template include that template for processing. I do this for processing the form `http://autogen.sourceforge.net/conftest.html`. The `"cgi.tpl"` looks approximately like this:

```
<? AutoGen5 Template ?>
<?
IF (not (exist? "template"))                        ?><?
  form-error                                        ?><?

ELIF (=* (get "template") "/")                      ?><?
  form-error                                        ?><?

ELIF (define tpl-file (string-append "cgi-tpl/"
                      (get "template")))
     (access? tpl-file R_OK)                        ?><?
  INCLUDE (. tpl-file)                              ?><?

ELIF (set! tpl-file (string-append tpl-file ".tpl"))
     (access? tpl-file R_OK)                        ?><?
  INCLUDE (. tpl-file)                              ?><?

ELSE                                                ?><?
  form-error                                        ?><?
ENDIF                                               ?>
```

This forces the template to be found in the `"cgi-tpl/"` directory. Note also that there is no suffix specified in the pseudo macro (see Section 3.1 [pseudo macro], page 20). That tells AutoGen to emit the output to '`stdout`'.

The output is actually spooled until it is complete so that, in the case of an error, the output can be discarded and a proper error message can be written in its stead.

**Please also note** that it is advisable, *especially* for network accessible machines, to configure AutoGen (see Section 6.1 [configuring], page 69) with shell processing disabled (`--disable-shell`). That will make it impossible for any referenced template to hand data to a subshell for interpretation.

## 6.3 Signal Names

When AutoGen is first built, it tries to use `psignal(3)`, `sys_siglist`, `strsigno(3)` and `strsignal(3)` from the host operating system. If your system does not supply these, the AutoGen distribution will. However, it will use the distributed mapping and this mapping

is unlikely to match what your system uses. This can be fixed. Once you have installed autogen, the mapping can be rebuilt on the host operating system. To do so, you must perform the following steps:

1. Build and install AutoGen in a place where it will be found in your search path.
2. `cd ${top_srcdir}/compat`
3. `autogen strsignal.def`
4. Verify the results by examining the '`strsignal.h`' file produced.
5. Re-build and re-install AutoGen.

If you have any problems or peculiarities that cause this process to fail on your platform, please send me copies of the header files containing the signal names and numbers, along with the full path names of these files. I will endeavor to fix it. There is a shell script inside of '`strsignal.def`' that tries to hunt down the information.

## 6.4 Installing AutoGen

There are several files that get installed. The number depend whether or not both shared and archive libraries are to be installed. The following assumes that everything is installed relative to `$prefix`. You can, of course, use `configure` to place these files where you wish.

**NB** AutoGen does not contain any compiled-in path names. All support directories are located via option processing, the environment variable `HOME` or finding the directory where the executable came from.

The installed files are:

1. The executables in '`bin`' (autogen, getdefs and columns).
2. The AutoOpts link libraries as '`lib/libopts.*`'.
3. An include file in '`include/options.h`', needed for Automated Option Processing (see next chapter).
4. Several template files and a scheme script in '`share/autogen`', needed for Automated Option Processing (see Chapter 7 [AutoOpts], page 73), parsing definitions written with scheme syntax (see Section 2.4 [Dynamic Text], page 10), the templates for producing documentation for your program (see Section 7.4.9 [documentation attributes], page 97), autoconf test macros, and AutoFSM.
5. Info-style help files as '`info/autogen.info*`'. These files document AutoGen, the option processing library AutoOpts, and several add-on components.
6. The three man pages for the three executables are installed in man/man1.

This program, library and supporting files can be installed with three commands:

- <src-dir>/configure [ <configure-options> ]
- make
- make install

However, you may wish to insert `make check` before the `make install` command.

If you do perform a `make check` and there are any failures, you will find the results in `<module>/test/FAILURES`. Needless to say, I would be interested in seeing the contents of those files and any associated messages. If you choose to go on and analyze one of these

failures, you will need to invoke the test scripts individually. You may do so by specifying the test (or list of test) in the TESTS make variable, thus:

```
gmake TESTS=test-name.test check
```

I specify `gmake` because most makes will not let you override internal definitions with command line arguments. `gmake` does.

All of the AutoGen tests are written to honor the contents of the `VERBOSE` environment variable. Normally, any commentary generated during a test run is discarded unless the `VERBOSE` environment variable is set. So, to see what is happening during the test, you might invoke the following with *bash* or *ksh*:

```
VERBOSE=1 gmake TESTS="for.test forcomma.test" check
```

Or equivalently with *csh*:

```
env VERBOSE=1 gmake TESTS="for.test forcomma.test" check
```

# 7 Automated Option Processing

AutoOpts 31.1 is bundled with AutoGen. It is a tool that virtually eliminates the hassle of processing options and keeping man pages, info docs and usage text up to date. This package allows you to specify several program attributes, up to a hundred option types and many option attributes. From this, it then produces all the code necessary to parse and handle the command line and configuration file options, and the documentation that should go with your program as well.

All the features notwithstanding, some applications simply have well-established command line interfaces. Even still, those programs may use the configuration file parsing portion of the library. See the "AutoOpts Features" and "Configuration File Format" sections.

## 7.1 AutoOpts Features

AutoOpts supports option processing; option state saving; and program documentation with innumerable features. Here, we list a few obvious ones and some important ones, but the full list is really defined by all the attributes defined in the Section 7.4 [Option Definitions], page 77 section.

1. POSIX-compliant short (flag) option processing.
2. GNU-style long options processing. Long options are recognized without case sensitivity, and they may be abbreviated.
3. Environment variable initializations, See Section 7.9.4 [environrc], page 128.
4. Initialization from configuration files (aka RC or INI files), and saving the option state back into one, See Section 7.9.1 [loading rcfile], page 122.
5. Config files may be partitioned. One config file may be used by several programs by partitioning it with lines containing, "`[PROGRAM_NAME]`" or "`<?program-name>`", See Section 7.9.1 [loading rcfile], page 122.
6. Options may be marked as *dis*`-abled` with a disablement prefix. Such options may default to either an enabled or a disabled state. You may also provide an enablement prefix, too, e.g., `--allow-mumble` and `--prevent-mumble` (see Section 7.4.5.2 [Common Attributes], page 88).
7. Verify that required options are present between the minimum and maximum number of times on the command line. Verify that conflicting options do not appear together. Verify that options requiring the presence of other options are, in fact, used in the presence of other options. See See Section 7.4.5.2 [Common Attributes], page 88, and See Section 7.4.5.10 [Option Conflict Attributes], page 92.
8. There are several Section 7.4.10 [automatic options], page 98. They will have short flags if any options have option flags and the flags are not suppressed. The associated flag may be altered or suppressed by specifying no value or an alternate character for "`xxx-value;`" in the option definition file. "`xxx`" is the name of the option below:

   '`--help`'
   '`--more-help`'
   : These are always available. "`more-help`" will pass the full usage text through a pager.

'`--usage`' This is added to the option list if "`usage-opt`" is specified. It yields the abbreviated usage to '`stdout`'.

'`--version`'
This is added to the option list if "`version = xxx;`" is specified.

'`--load-opts`'
'`--save-opts`'
These are added to the option list if "`homerc`" is specified.

9. Various forms of main procedures can be added to the output, See Section 7.4.3 [Generated main], page 82. There are four basic forms:
   a. A program that processes the arguments and writes to standard out portable shell commands containing the digested options.
   b. A program that will generate portable shell commands to parse the defined options. The expectation is that this result will be copied into a shell script and used there.
   c. A "for-each" main that will invoke a named function once for either each non-option argument on the command line or, if there are none, then once for each non-blank, non-comment input line read from stdin.
   d. A main procedure of your own design. Its code can be supplied in the option description template or by incorporating another template.
10. There are several methods for handling option arguments.
    - nothing (see Section 7.5.13 [OPT_ARG], page 104) option argument strings are globally available.
    - user supplied (see Section 7.4.7 [Option Argument Handling], page 95)
    - stack option arguments (see Section 7.4.7 [Option Argument Handling], page 95)
    - integer numbers (see Section 7.4.6.5 [arg-type number], page 93)
    - true or false valued (see Section 7.4.6.6 [arg-type boolean], page 94)
    - enumerated list of names (see Section 7.4.6.7 [arg-type keyword], page 94)
    - an enumeration (membership) set (see Section 7.4.6.8 [arg-type set membership], page 94)
    - a list of name/value pairs (option "subopts") (see Section 7.4.6.9 [arg-type hierarchy], page 95)
    - validated file name (see Section 7.4.6.10 [arg-type file name], page 95)
    - optional option argument (see Section 7.4.6.2 [arg-optional], page 93)
11. The generated usage text can be emitted in either AutoOpts standard format (maximizing the information about each option), or GNU-ish normal form. The default form is selected by either specifying or not specifying the `gnu-usage` attribute (see Section 7.4.4 [information attributes], page 86). This can be overridden by the user himself with the `AUTOOPTS_USAGE` environment variable. If it exists and is set to the string `gnu`, it will force GNU-ish style format; if it is set to the string `autoopts`, it will force AutoOpts standard format; otherwise, it will have no effect.
12. If you compile with `ENABLE_NLS` defined and `_()` defined to a localization function such as `gettext(3GNU)`, then the option processing code will be localizable (see Section 7.15 [i18n], page 153).

13. Provides a callable routine to parse a text string as if it were from one of the rc/ini/config files, hereafter referred to as a configuration file.
14. By adding a '`doc`' and '`arg-name`' attributes to each option, AutoGen will also be able to produce a man page and the '`invoking`' section of a texinfo document.
15. Intermingled option processing. AutoOpts options may be intermingled with command line operands and options processed with other parsing techniques. This is accomplished by setting the `allow-errors` (see Section 7.4.1 [program attributes], page 78) attribute. When processing reaches a point where `optionProcess` (see Section 7.5.32.11 [libopts-optionProcess], page 114) needs to be called again, the current option can be set with `RESTART_OPT(n)` (see Section 7.5.19 [RESTART_OPT], page 105) before calling `optionProcess`.

    See: See Section 7.4.2 [library attributes], page 80.
16. Library suppliers can specify command line options that their client programs will accept. They specify option definitions that get `#include`-d into the client option definitions and they specify an `"anchor"` option that has a callback and must be invoked. That will give the library access to the option state for their options.
17. library options. An AutoOpt-ed library may export its options for use in an AutoOpt-ed program. This is done by providing an option definition file that client programs `#include` into their own option definitions. See "AutoOpt-ed Library for AutoOpt-ed Program" (see Section 7.4.2.1 [lib and program], page 81) for more details.
18. Insert the option processing state into Scheme-defined variables. Thus, Guile based applications that are linked with private `main()` routines can take advantage of all of AutoOpts' functionality.

## 7.2 AutoOpts Licensing

When AutoGen is installed, the AutoOpts project is installed with it. AutoOpts includes various AutoGen templates and a pair of shared libraries. These libraries may be used under the terms of version 3 of the GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL).

One of these libraries (`libopts`) is needed by programs that are built using AutoOpts generated code. This library is available as a separate "tear-off" source tarball. It is redistributable for use under either of two licenses: The above mentioned GNU Lesser General Public License, and the advertising-clause-free BSD license. Both of these license terms are incorporated into appropriate COPYING files included with the `libopts` source tarball. This source may be incorporated into your package with the following simple commands:

```
rm -rf libopts libopts-*
gunzip -c `autoopts-config libsrc` | \
   tar -xvf -
mv libopts-*.*.* libopts
```

View the '`libopts/README`' file for further integration information.

## 7.3 Quick Start

Since it is generally easier to start with a simple example than it is to look at the options that AutoGen uses itself, here is a very simple AutoOpts example. You can copy this example out of the Info file and into a source file to try it. You can then embellish it into what you really need. For more extensive examples, you can also examine the help output and option definitions for the commands `columns`, `getdefs` and `autogen` itself.

For our simple example, assume you have a program named `check` that takes two options:

1. A list of directories to check over for whatever it is `check` does. You want this option available as a POSIX-style flag option and a GNU long option. You want to allow as many of these as the user wishes.
2. An option to show or not show the definition tree being used. Only one occurrence is to be allowed, specifying one or the other.

First, specify your program attributes and its options to AutoOpts, as with the following example.

```
AutoGen Definitions options;
prog-name     = check;
prog-title    = "Checkout Automated Options";
long-opts;

main = { main-type = shell-process; };

flag = {
    name      = check-dirs;
    value     = L;        /* flag style option character */
    arg-type  = string;   /* option argument indication  */
    max       = NOLIMIT;  /* occurrence limit (none)     */
    stack-arg;            /* save opt args in a stack    */
    descrip   = "Checkout directory list";
};

flag = {
    name      = show_defs;
    descrip   = "Show the definition tree";
    disable   = dont;     /* mark as enable/disable type */
                          /* option.  Disable as ‘dont-’ */
};
```

Then perform the following steps:

1. `cflags="-DTEST_CHECK_OPTS ‘autoopts-config cflags‘"`
2. `ldflags="‘autoopts-config ldflags‘"`
3. `autogen checkopt.def`
4. `cc -o check -g ${cflags} checkopt.c ${ldflags}`
5. `./check --help`

Running those commands yields:

```
check - Checkout Automated Options
USAGE:  check [ -<flag> [<val>] | --<name>[{=| }<val>] ]...
  Flg Arg Option-Name    Description
   -L Str check-dirs     Checkout directory list
                                 - may appear multiple times
      no  show-defs      Show the definition tree
                                 - disabled as --dont-show-defs
   -? no  help           Display usage information and exit
   -! no  more-help      Extended usage information passed thru pager

Options are specified by doubled hyphens and their name
or by a single hyphen and the flag character.
```

Normally, however, you would compile ‘`checkopt.c`’ as in:

```
cc -o checkopt.o $cflags -c checkopt.c
```

and link ‘`checkopt.o`’ with the rest of your program. The main program causes the options to be processed by calling `optionProcess` (see Section 7.5.32.11 [libopts-optionProcess], page 114):

```
main( int argc, char** argv )
{
  {
    int optct = optionProcess( &checkOptions, argc, argv );
    argc -= optct;
    argv += optct;
  }
```

The options are tested and used as in the following fragment. “`ENABLED_OPT`” is used instead of “`HAVE_OPT`” for the `show-defs` option because it is an enabled/disabled option type:

```
  if (  ENABLED_OPT( SHOW_DEFS )
     && HAVE_OPT( CHECK_DIRS )) {
    int    dirct = STACKCT_OPT( CHECK_DIRS );
    char** dirs  = STACKLST_OPT( CHECK_DIRS );
    while (dirct-- > 0) {
      char* dir = *dirs++;
      ...
```

A lot of magic happens to make this happen. The rest of this chapter will describe the myriad of option attributes supported by AutoOpts. However, keep in mind that, in general, you won’t need much more than what was described in this "quick start" section.

## 7.4 Option Definitions

AutoOpts uses an AutoGen definitions file for the definitions of the program options and overall configuration attributes. The complete list of program and option attributes is quite extensive, so if you are reading to understand how to use AutoOpts, I recommend reading the "Quick Start" section (see Section 7.3 [Quick Start], page 76) and paying attention to the following:

1. `prog-name`, `prog-title`, and `argument`, program attributes, See Section 7.4.1 [program attributes], page 78.
2. `name` and `descrip` option attributes, See Section 7.4.5.1 [Required Attributes], page 88.
3. `value` (flag character) and `min` (occurrence counts) option attributes, See Section 7.4.5.2 [Common Attributes], page 88.
4. `arg-type` from the option argument specification section, See Section 7.4.6 [Option Arguments], page 92.
5. Read the overall how to, See Section 7.8 [Using AutoOpts], page 120.
6. Highly recommended, but not required, are the several "man" and "info" documentation attributes, See Section 7.4.9 [documentation attributes], page 97.

Keep in mind that the majority are rarely used and can be safely ignored. However, when you have special option processing requirements, the flexibility is there.

### 7.4.1 Program Description Attributes

The following global definitions are used to define attributes of the entire program. These generally alter the configuration or global behavior of the AutoOpts option parser. The first two are required of every program. The third is required if there are to be any left over arguments (operands) after option processing. The rest have been alphabetized. Except as noted, there may be only one copy of each of these definitions:

'`prog-name`'
: This attribute is required. Variable names derived from this name are derived using `string->c_name!` (see Section 3.5.57 [SCM string->c-name!], page 49).

'`prog-title`'
: This attribute is required and may be any descriptive text.

'`argument`'
: This attribute is required if your program uses operand arguments. It specifies the syntax of the arguments that **follow** the options. It may not be empty, but if it is not supplied, then option processing must consume all the arguments. If it is supplied and starts with an open bracket (`[`), then there is no requirement on the presence or absence of command line arguments following the options. Lastly, if it is supplied and does not start with an open bracket, then option processing must **not** consume all of the command line arguments.

'`allow-errors`'
: The presence of this attribute indicates ignoring any command line option errors. This may also be turned on and off by invoking the macros `ERRSKIP_OPTERR` and `ERRSTOP_OPTERR` from the generated interface file.

'`config-header`'
: The contents of this attribute should be just the name of the configuration file. A "#include" naming this file will be inserted at the top of the generated header.

'`environrc`'
: Indicates looking in the environment for values of variables named, `PROGRAM_OPTNAME` or `PROGRAM`, where `PROGRAM` is the upper cased `C-name` of the program and `OPTNAME` is the upper cased `C-name` of a specific option.

'`export`' This string is inserted into the .h interface file. Generally used for global variables or `#include` directives required by `flag-code` text and shared with other program text. Do not specify your configuration header ('`config.h`') in this attribute or the `include` attribute, however. Instead, use `config-header`, above.n.

'`full-usage`'
If this attribute is provided, it may specify the full length usage text, or a variable name assignable to a "char const *" pointer, or it may be empty. The meanings are determined by the length.

- If not provided, the text will be computed as normal.
- If the length is zero, then the usage text will be derived from the current settings and inserted as text into the generated .c file.
- If the length is 1 to 32 bytes, then it is presumed to be a variable name that either points to or is an array of const chars.
- If it is longer than that, it is presumed to be the help text itself. This text will be inserted into the generated .c file.

This string should be readily translatable and provision will be made to translate it if this is provided and the source code is compiled with "ENABLE_NLS" defined.

'`guard-option-names`'
AutoOpts generates macros that presume that there are no `cpp` macros with the same name as the option name. For example, if you have an option named, `debug`, then you must not use `#ifdef DEBUG` in your code. If you specify this attribute, every option name will be guarded. If the name is `#define`-d, then a warning will be issued and the name undefined. If you do not specify this and there is a conflict, you will get strange error messages.

This attribute may be set to any of four recognized states:

- Not defined. AutoOpts will behave as described above.
- Defined, but set to the empty string. Text will be emitted into the header to undefine (`#undef`) any conflicting preprocessor macros. The code will include compiler warnings (via `#warning`). Some compilers are not ANSI-C-99 compliant yet and will error out on those warnings. You may compile with `-DNO_OPTION_NAME_WARNINGS` to silence or mostly silence them.
- Defined and set to the string, "`no-warning`". All of the needed `#undef`s will be emitted, without any conflict checking `#warning` directives emitted.
- Defined and set to the string, "`full-enum`". The option manipulation preprocessor macros will not token paste the option names to the index enumeration prefix. e.g. you will need to use `HAVE_OPT(INDEX_OPT_DEBUG)` instead of `HAVE_OPT(DEBUG)`.

'`homerc`' Specifies either a directory or a file using a specific path (like `.` or '`/usr/local/share/progname`') or an environment variable (like '`$HOME/rc/`' or '`$PREFIX/share/progname`') or the directory where the executable was found ('`$$[/...]`') to use to try to find the rcfile. Use as many as you like.

The presence of this attribute activates the `--save-opts` and `--load-opts` options. See Section 7.9.1 [loading rcfile], page 122.

'`include`' This string is inserted into the .c file. Generally used for global variables required only by `flag-code` program text.

'`long-opts`'
Presence indicates GNU-standard long option processing. If any options do not have an option value (flag character) specified, and least one does specify such a value, then you must specify `long-opts`. If none of your options specify an option value (flag character) and you do not specify `long-opts`, then command line arguments are processed in "named option mode". This means that:

- Every command line argument must be a long option.
- The flag markers `-` and `--` are completely optional.
- The `argument` program attribute is disallowed.
- One of the options may be specified as the default (as long as it has a required option argument).

'`no-xlate`'
Modifies when or whether option names get translated. If provided, it must be assigned one of two values:

'`opt-cfg`' to suppress option name translation for configuration file and and environment variable processing.

'`opt`' to suppress option name translation completely. The usage text will always be translated if `ENABLE_NLS` is defined and you have translations for that text.

See also the various "`XLAT`" interface entries in the AutoOpts Programmatic Interface section (see Section 7.5 [AutoOpts API], page 101).

'`prefix`' This value is inserted into **all** global names. This will disambiguate them if more than one set of options are to be compiled into a single program.

'`rcfile`' Specifies the configuration file name. This is only useful if you have provided at least one `homerc` attribute. default: .<prog-name>rc

'`short-usage`'
If this attribute is provided, it is used to specify an abbreviated version of the usage text. This text is constructed in the same way as the "full-usage", described above.

'`version`' Specifies the program version and activates the VERSION option, See Section 7.4.10 [automatic options], page 98.

### 7.4.2 Options for Library Code

Some libraries provide their own code for processing command line options, and this may be used by programs that utilize AutoOpts. You may also wish to write a library that gets configured with AutoOpts options and config files. Such a library may either supply its own configury routine and process its own options, or it may export its option descriptions to programs that also use AutoOpts. This section will describe how to do all of these different things.

#### 7.4.2.1 AutoOpt-ed Library for AutoOpt-ed Program

The library source code must provide an option definition file that consists of only the `flag` entries. The first `flag` entry must contain the following attributes:

'`name`' This name is used in the construction of a global pointer of type `tOptDesc const*`. It is always required.

'`documentation`'
It tells `AutoOpts` that this option serves no normal purpose. It will be used to add usage clarity and to locate option descriptors in the library code.

'`descrip`' This is a string that is inserted in the extended usage display before the options specific to the current library. It is always required.

'`lib-name`'
This should match the name of the library. This string is also used in the construction of the option descriptor pointer name. In the end, it looks like this:

```
extern tOptDesc const* <<lib-name>>_<<name>>_optDesc_p;
```

and is used in the macros generated for the library's `.h` file.

In order to compile this `AutoOpts` using library, you must create a special header that is not used by the client program. This is accomplished by creating an option definition file that contains essentially exactly the following:

```
AutoGen definitions options;
prog-name  = does-not-matter;  // but is always required
prog-title = 'also does not matter';  // also required
config-header = 'config.h'; // optional, but common
library;
#include library-options-only.def
```

and nothing else. AutoGen will produce only the `.h` file. You may now compile your library, referencing just this `.h` file. The macros it creates will utilize a global variable that will be defined by the `AutoOpts`-using client program. That program will need to have the following `#include` in *its* option definition file:

```
#include library-options-only.def
```

All the right things will magically happen so that the global variables named `<<lib-name>>_<<name>>_optDesc_p` are initialized correctly. For an example, please see the `AutoOpts` test script: '`autoopts/test/library.test`'.

#### 7.4.2.2 AutoOpt-ed Library for Regular Program

In this case, your library must provide an option processing function to a calling program. This is accomplished by setting the `allow-errors` global option attribute. Each time your option handling function is called, you must determine where your scan is to resume and tell the AutoOpts library by invoking:

```
RESTART_OPT(next_arg_index);
```

and then invoke `not_opt_index = optionProcess(...)`. The `not_opt_index` value can be used to set `optind`, if that is the global being used to scan the program argument array.

In this method, do **NOT** utilize the global `library` attribute. Your library must specify its options as if it were a complete program. You may choose to specify an alternate `usage()` function so that usage for other parts of the option interface may be displayed as well. See "Program Information Attributes" (see Section 7.4.4 [information attributes], page 86).

At the moment, there is no method for calling `optionUsage()` telling it to produce just the information about the options and not the program as a whole. Some later revision after somebody asks.

#### 7.4.2.3 AutoOpt-ed Program Calls Regular Library

As with providing an `AutoOpt`-ed library to a non-`AutoOpt`-ed program, you must write the option description file as if you were writing all the options for the program, but you should specify the `allow-errors` global option attribute and you will likely want an alternate `usage()` function (see "Program Information Attributes" see Section 7.4.4 [information attributes], page 86). In this case, though, when `optionProcess()` returns, you need to test to see if there might be library options. If there might be, then call the library's exported routine for handling command line options, set the next-option-to-process with the `RESTART_OPT()` macro, and recall `optionProcess()`. Repeat until done.

### 7.4.3 Generating main procedures

When AutoOpts generates the code to parse the command line options, it has the ability to produce any of several types of `main()` procedures. This is done by specifying a global structured value for `main`. The values that it contains are dependent on the value set for the one value it must have: `main-type`.

The recognized values for `main-type` are:

Here is an example of an `include` variation:

```
main = {
  main-type = include;
  tpl       = "main-template.tpl";
};
```

#### 7.4.3.1 guile: main and inner_main procedures

When the `main-type` is specified to be `guile`, a `main()` procedure is generated that calls `gh_enter()`, providing it with a generated `inner_main()` to invoke. If you must perform certain tasks before calling `gh_enter()`, you may specify such code in the value for the `before-guile-boot` attribute.

The `inner_main()` procedure itself will process the command line arguments (by calling `optionProcess()`, see Section 7.5.32.11 [libopts-optionProcess], page 114), and then either invoke the code specified with the `guile-main` attribute, or else export the parsed options to Guile symbols and invoke the `scm_shell()` function from the Guile library. This latter will render the program nearly identical to the stock `guile(1)` program.

#### 7.4.3.2 shell-process: emit Bourne shell results

This will produce a `main()` procedure that parses the command line options and emits to '`stdout`' Bourne shell commands that puts the option state into environment variables. This can be used within a shell script as follows:

```
unset OPTION_CT
eval "`opt_parser \"$@\"`"
test -z "${OPTION_CT}" && exit 1
test ${OPTION_CT} -gt 0 && shift ${OPTION_CT}
```

If the option parsing code detects an error or a request for usage, it will not emit an assignment to OPTION_CT and the script should just exit. If the options are set consistently, then something along the lines of the following will be written to '`stdout`' and evaled:

```
OPTION_CT=4
export OPTION_CT
MYPROG_SECOND='first'
export MYPROG_SECOND
MYPROG_ANOTHER=1 # 0x1
export MYPROG_ANOTHER
```

If the arguments are to be reordered, however, then the resulting set of operands will be emitted and `OPTION_CT` gets set to zero. For example, the following would be appended to the above:

```
set -- 'operand1' 'operand2' 'operand3'
OPTION_CT=0
```

`OPTION_CT` is set to zero since it is not necessary to shift off any options.

#### 7.4.3.3 shell-parser: emit Bourne shell script

This will produce a `main()` procedure that emits a shell script that will parse the command line options. That script can be emitted to '`stdout`' or inserted or substituted into a pre-existing shell script file. Improbable markers are used to identify previously inserted parsing text:

```
# # # # # # # # # # -- do not modify this marker --
```

The program is also pretty insistent upon starting its parsing script on the second line.

#### 7.4.3.4 main: user supplied main procedure

You must supply a value for the `main-text` attribute. You may also supply a value for `option-code`. If you do, then the `optionProcess` invocation will not be emitted into the code. AutoOpts will wrap the `main-text` inside of:

```
int
main( int argc, char** argv )
{
    {
        int ct = optionProcess( &<<prog-name>>Options, argc, argv );
        argc -= ct;
        argv += ct;
    }
<<your text goes here>>
}
```

so you can most conveniently set the value with a "`here string`" (see Section 2.2.7 [here-string], page 8):

```
code = <<- _EndOfMainProc_
<<your text goes here>>
_EndOfMainProc_;
```

#### 7.4.3.5 include: code emitted from included template

You must write a template to produce your main procedure. You specify the name of the template with the `tpl` attribute and it will be incorporated at the point where AutoOpts is ready to emit the `main()` procedure.

This can be very useful if, in your working environment, you have many programs with highly similar `main()` procedures. All you need to do is parameterize the variations and specify which variant is needed within the `main` AutoOpts specification. Since you are coding the template for this, the attributes needed for this variation would be dictated by your template.

#### 7.4.3.6 invoke: code emitted from AutoGen macro

You must write a template to produce your main procedure. That template must contain a definition for the function specified with the `func` attribute to this `main()` procedure specification. Typically, this template will be incorporated by using the `--lib-template` option (see Section 5.4 [autogen lib-template], page 63) in the AutoGen invocation. Otherwise, this variation operates in much the same way as "`include`" (see Section 7.4.3.5 [main include], page 84) method.

#### 7.4.3.7 for-each: perform function on each argument

This produces a main procedure that invokes a procedure once for each operand on the command line (non-option arguments), **OR** once for each non-blank, non-comment `stdin` input line. Leading and trailing white space is trimmed from the input line and comment lines are lines that are empty or begin with a comment character, defaulting to a hash ('#') character.

**NB**: The `argument` program attribute (see Section 7.4.1 [program attributes], page 78) must begin with the `[` character, to indicate that there are command operands, but that they are optional.

There are a number of attributes to `main` that may be used:

`handler-proc`

This attribute is required. It is used to name the procedure to call. That procedure is presumed to be external, but if you provide the code for it, then the procedure is emitted as a static procedure in the generated code.

This procedure should return 0 on success, a cumulative error code on warning and exit without returning on an unrecoverable error. As the cumulative warning codes are *or*-ed together, the codes should be some sort of bit mask in order to be ultimately decipherable (if you need to do that).

If the called procedure needs to cause a fail-exit, it is expected to call `exit(3)` directly. If you want to cause a warning exit code, then this handler function should return a non-zero status. That value will be **OR**-ed into a result integer for computing the final exit code. E.g., here is part of the emitted code:

```
int res = 0;
if (argc > 0) {
   do  {
       res |= my_handler( *(argv++) );
   } while (--argc > 0);
} else { ...
```

`handler-type`

If you do not supply this attribute, your handler procedure must be the default type. The profile of the procedure must be:

```
int my_handler( char const *pz_entry );
```

However, if you do supply this attribute, you may select any of three alternate flavors:

'`name-of-file`'
: This is essentially the same as the default handler type, except that before your procedure is invoked, the generated code has verified that the string names an existing file. The profile is unchanged.

'`file-X`'
: Before calling your procedure, the file is f-opened according to the "X", where "X" may be any of the legal modes for `fopen(3C)`. In this case, the profile for your procedure must be:

```
int my_handler( char const* pz_fname, FILE* entry_fp );
```

'`text-of-file`'
'`some-text-of-file`'
: Before calling your procedure, the contents of the file are read into memory. (Excessively large files may cause problems.) The "'`some-text-of-file`'" disallows empty files. Both require regular files. In this case, the profile for your procedure must be:

```
int my_handler( char const* pz_fname, char* file_text,
                size_t text_size );
```

Note that though the `file_text` is not `const`, any changes made to it are not written back to the original file. It is merely a memory image of the file contents. Also, the memory allocated to hold the text is `text_size + 1` bytes long and the final byte is always `NUL`. The file contents need not be text, as the data are read with the `read(2)` system call.

*`my_handler`*`-code`

With this attribute, you provide the code for your handler procedure in the option definition file. In this case, your `main()` procedure specification might look something like this:

```
main = {
  main-type    = for-each;
  handler-proc = my_handler;
  my_handler-code = <<- EndOfMyCode
/* whatever you want to do */
```

```
EndOfMyCode;
};
```

and instead of an emitted external reference, a procedure will be emitted that looks like this:

```
static int
my_handler( char const* pz_entry )
{
    int res = 0;
    <<my_handler-code goes here>>
    return res;
}
```

`main-init`
: This is code that gets inserted after the options have been processed, but before the handler procs get invoked.

`main-fini`
: This is code that gets inserted after all the entries have been processed, just before returning from `main()`.

`comment-char`
: If you wish comment lines to start with a character other than a hash (`#`) character, then specify one character with this attribute. If that character is the `NUL` byte, then only blank lines will be considered comments.

### 7.4.4 Program Information Attributes

These attributes are used to define how and what information is displayed to the user of the program.

'`copyright`'
: The `copyright` is a structured value containing three to five values. If `copyright` is used, then the first three are required.

1. '`date`' - the list of applicable dates for the copyright.
2. '`owner`' - the name of the copyright holder.
3. '`type`' - specifies the type of distribution license. AutoOpts/AutoGen will automatically support the text of the GNU Public License ('`GPL`'), the GNU General Public License with Library extensions ('`LGPL`'), the Free BSD license ('`BSD`'), and a write-it-yourself copyright notice ('`NOTE`'). Only these values are recognized.
4. '`text`' - the text of the copyright notice. It is only needed if '`type`' is set to '`NOTE`'.
5. '`author`' - in case the author name is to appear in the documentation and is different from the copyright owner.
6. '`eaddr`' - email address for receiving praises and complaints. Typically that of the author or copyright holder.

An example of this might be:

```
copyright = {
    date  = "1992-2004";
    owner = "Bruce Korb";
    eaddr = 'bkorb@gnu.org';
    type  = GPL;
};
```

'detail' This string is added to the usage output when the HELP option is selected.

'explain' Gives additional information whenever the usage routine is invoked..

'package' The name of the package the program belongs to. This will appear parenthetically after the program name in the version and usage output, e.g.: `autogen` *(GNU autogen)* - The Automated Program Generator.

'preserve-case'
This attribute will not change anything except appearance. Normally, the option names are all documented in lower case. However, if you specify this attribute, then they will display in the case used in their specification. Command line options will still be matched without case sensitivity.

'prog-desc **and**'
'opts-ptr'
These define global pointer variables that point to the program descriptor and the first option descriptor for a library option. This is intended for use by certain libraries that need command line and/or initialization file option processing. These definitions have no effect on the option template output, but are used for creating a library interface file. Normally, the first "option" for a library will be a documentation option that cannot be specified on the command line, but is marked as `settable`. The library client program will invoke the `SET_OPTION` macro which will invoke a handler function that will finally set these global variables.

'usage' Optionally names the usage procedure, if the library routine `optionUsage()` does not work for you. If you specify `my_usage` as the value of this attribute, for example, you will use a procedure by that name for displaying usage. Of course, you will need to provide that procedure and it must conform to this profile:

```
void my_usage( tOptions* pOptions, int exitCode )
```

'gnu-usage'
Normally, the default format produced by the `optionUsage` procedure is *AutoOpts Standard*. By specifying this attribute, the default format will be *GNU-ish style*. Either default may be overridden by the user with the `AUTOOPTS_USAGE` environment variable. If it is set to `gnu` or `autoopts`, it will alter the style appropriately. This attribute will conflict with the `usage` attribute.

'reorder-args'
Some applications traditionally require that the command operands be intermixed with the command options. In order to handle that, the arguments must be reordered. If you are writing such an application, specify this global option.

All of the options (and any associated option arguments) will be brought to the beginning of the argument list. New applications should not use this feature, if at all possible. This feature is *disabled* if `POSIXLY_CORRECT` is defined in the environment.

### 7.4.5 Option Attributes

For each option you wish to specify, you must have a block macro named `flag` defined. There are two required attributes: `name` and `descrip`. If any options do not have a `value` (traditional flag character) attribute, then the `long-opts` program attribute must also be defined. As a special exception, if no options have a `value` **and** `long-opts` is not defined **and** `argument` is not defined, then all arguments to the program are named options. In this case, the `-` and `--` command line option markers are optional.

#### 7.4.5.1 Required Attributes

Every option must have exactly one copy of both of these attributes.

'`name`' Long name for the option. Even if you are not accepting long options and are only accepting flags, it must be provided. AutoOpts generates private, named storage that requires this name. This name also causes a `#define`-d name to be emitted. It must not conflict with any other names you may be using in your program.

For example, if your option name is, `debug` or `munged-up`, you must not use the `#define` names `DEBUG` (or `MUNGED_UP`) in your program for non-AutoOpts related purposes. They are now used by AutoOpts.

Sometimes (most especially under Windows), you may get a surprise. For example, `INTERFACE` is apparently a user space name that one should be free to use. Windows usurps this name. To solve this, you must do one of the following:

1. Change the name of your option
2. add the program attribute (see Section 7.4.1 [program attributes], page 78):

```
export = '#undef INTERFACE';
```

3. add the program attribute:

```
guard-option-names;
```

'`descrip`' Except for documentation options, a **very** brief description of the option. About 40 characters on one line, maximum. It appears on the `usage()` output next to the option name. If, however, the option is a documentation option, it will appear on one or more lines by itself. It is thus used to visually separate and comment upon groups of options in the usage text.

#### 7.4.5.2 Common Option Attributes

These option attributes are optional. Any that do appear in the definition of a flag, may appear only once.

'`value`' The flag character to specify for traditional option flags, e.g., `-L`.

'max' Maximum occurrence count (invalid if *disable* present). The default maximum is 1. `NOLIMIT` can be used for the value, otherwise it must be a number or a `#define` that evaluates to a number.

'min' Minimum occurrence count. If present, then the option **must** appear on the command line. Do not define it with the value zero (0).

'must-set'
If an option must be specified, but it need not be specified on the command line, then specify this attribute for the option.

'enable' Long-name prefix for enabling the option (invalid if *disable* **not** present). Only useful if long option names are being processed.

'disable' Prefix for disabling (inverting sense of) the option. Only useful if long option names are being processed.

'enabled' If default is for option being enabled. (Otherwise, the OPTST_DISABLED bit is set at compile time.) Only useful if the option can be disabled.

'ifdef'
'ifndef' If an option is relevant on certain platforms or when certain features are enabled or disabled, you can specify the compile time flag used to indicate when the option should be compiled in or out. For example, if you have a configurable feature, `mumble` that is indicated with the compile time define, `WITH_MUMBLING`, then add:

```
ifdef = WITH_MUMBLING;
```

Take care when using these. There are several caveats:

- The case and spelling must match whatever is specified.
- Do not confuse these attributes with the AutoGen directives of the same names, See Section 2.5 [Directives], page 10. These cause C preprocessing directives to be inserted into the generated C text.
- Only one of these attributes may apply to any given option.
- The `VALUE_OPT_` values are `#define`-d. If `WITH_MUMBLING` is not defined, then the associated `VALUE_OPT_` value will not be `#define`-d either. So, if you have an option named, `MUMBLING` that is active only if `WITH_MUMBLING` is `#define`-d, then `VALUE_OPT_MUMBLING` will be `#define`-d iff `WITH_MUMBLING` is `#define`-d. Watch those switch statements.

#### 7.4.5.3 Program may set option

If the option can be set outside of option processing, specify "`settable`". If this attribute is defined, special macros for setting this particular option will be inserted into the interface file. For example, `TEMPL_DIRS` is a settable option for AutoGen, so a macro named `SET_OPT_TEMPL_DIRS(a)` appears in the interface file. This attribute interacts with the *documentation* attribute.

#### 7.4.5.4 Option cannot be pre-configured

If presetting this option is not allowed, specify "`no-preset`". (Thus, environment variables and values set in configuration files will be ignored.)

#### 7.4.5.5 Option Equivalence Class

Generally, when several options are mutually exclusive and basically serve the purpose of selecting one of several processing modes, specify the "`equivalence`" attribute. These options will be considered an equivalence class. Sometimes, it is just easier to deal with them as such. All members of the equivalence class must contain the same equivalenced-to option, including the equivalenced-to option itself. Thus, it must be a class member.

For an option equivalence class, there is a single occurrence counter for the class. It can be referenced with the interface macro, `COUNT_OPT(BASE_OPTION)`, where "BASE_OPTION" is the equivalenced-to option name.

Also, please take careful note: since the options are mapped to the equivalenced-to option descriptor, any option argument values are mapped to that descriptor also. Be sure you know which "equivalent option" was selected before getting an option argument value!

During the presetting phase of option processing (see Section 7.9 [Presetting Options], page 122), equivalenced options may be specified. However, if different equivalenced members are specified, only the last instance will be recognized and the others will be discarded. A conflict error is indicated only when multiple different members appear on the command line itself.

As an example of where equivalenced options might be useful, `cpio(1)` has three options `-o`, `-i`, and `-p` that define the operational mode of the program (`create`, `extract` and `pass-through`, respectively). They form an equivalence class from which one and only one member must appear on the command line. If `cpio` were an AutoOpt-ed program, then each of these option definitions would contain:

```
equivalence = create;
```

and the program would be able to determine the operating mode with code that worked something like this:

```
switch (WHICH_IDX_CREATE) {
case INDEX_OPT_CREATE:       ...
case INDEX_OPT_EXTRACT:      ...
case INDEX_OPT_PASS_THROUGH: ...
default:    /* cannot happen */
}
```

#### 7.4.5.6 Default Option

If your program processes its arguments in named option mode (See "long-opts" in Section 7.4.1 [program attributes], page 78), then you may select **one** of your options to be the default option. Do so by using attribute "`default`" with one of the options. The option so specified must have an `arg-type` (see Section 7.4.6 [Option Arguments], page 92) specified, but not the `arg-optional` (see Section 7.4.6.2 [arg-optional], page 93) attribute. That is to say, the option argument must be required.

If you have done this, then any arguments that do not match an option name and do not contain an equal sign (`=`) will be interpreted as an option argument to the default option.

#### 7.4.5.7 Option Sectioning Comment

This attribute means the option exists for the purpose of separating option description text in the usage output. Libraries may choose to make it settable so that the library can determine which command line option is the first one that pertains to the library.

If the "`documentation`" attribute is present, then all other attributes are disabled except `settable`, `call-proc` and `flag_-ode`. `settable` must be and is only specified if `call-proc`, `extract-code` or `flag-code` has been specified. When present, the `descrip` attribute will be displayed only when the `--help` option has been specified. It will be displayed flush to the left hand margin and may consist of one or more lines of text. The name of the option will not be printed.

Documentation options are for clarifying the usage text and will not appear in generated man pages or in the generated invoking texinfo doc.

#### 7.4.5.8 Translator Notes

If you need to give the translators a special note about a particular option, please use the "`translators`" attribute. The attribute text will be emitted into the generated `.c` text where the option related strings get defined. To make a general comment about all of the option code, add comments to an `include` attribute (see Section 7.4.1 [program attributes], page 78). Do **not** use this attribute globally, or it will get emitted into every option definition block.

#### 7.4.5.9 Immediate Action Attributes

Certain options may need to be processed early. For example, in order to suppress the processing of configuration files, it is necessary to process the command line option `--no-load-opts` **before** the config files are processed. To accommodate this, certain options may have their enabled or disabled forms marked for immediate processing. The consequence of this is that they are processed ahead of all other options in the reverse of normal order.

Normally, the first options processed are the options specified in the first `homerc` file, followed by then next `homerc` file through to the end of config file processing. Next, environment variables are processed and finally, the command line options. The later options override settings processed earlier. That actually gives them higher priority. Command line immediate action options actually have the lowest priority of all. They would be used only if they are to have an effect on the processing of subsequent options.

'`immediate`'
: Use this option attribute to specify that the enabled form of the option is to be processed immediately. The `help` and `more-help` options are so specified. They will also call `exit()` upon completion, so they **do** have an effect on the processing of the remaining options :-).

'`immed-disable`'
: Use this option attribute to specify that the disabled form of the option is to be processed immediately. The `load-opts` option is so specified. The `--no-load-opts` command line option will suppress the processing of config files and environment variables. Contrariwise, the `--load-opts` command line option is processed normally. That means that the options specified in that file will be

processed after all the `homerc` files and, in fact, after options that precede it on the command line.

'`also`' If either the `immediate` or the `immed-disable` attributes are set to the string, "`also`", then the option will actually be processed twice: first at the immediate processing phase and again at the "normal" time.

#### 7.4.5.10 Option Conflict Attributes

These attributes may be used as many times as you need. They are used at the end of the option processing to verify that the context within which each option is found does not conflict with the presence or absence of other options.

This is not a complete cover of all possible conflicts and requirements, but it simple to implement and covers the more common situations.

'`flags-must`'
one entry for every option that **must** be present when this option is present

'`flags-cant`'
one entry for every option that **cannot** be present when this option is present

### 7.4.6 Option Argument Specification

Command line options come in three flavors: options that do not take arguments, those that do and those that may. Without an "arg-type" attribute, AutoOpts will not process an argument to an option. If "arg-type" is specified and "arg-optional" is also specified, then the next command line token will be taken to be an argument, unless it looks like the name of another option.

If the argument type is specified to be anything other than "str[ing]", then AutoOpts will specify a callback procedure to handle the argument. Some of these procedures will be created and inserted into the generated `.c` file, and others are already built into the '`libopts`' library. Therefore, if you write your own callback procedure (see Section 7.4.7 [Option Argument Handling], page 95), then you must either not specify an "arg-type" attribute, or else specify it to be of type "str[ing]". Your callback function will be able to place its own restrictions on what that string may contain or represent.

Option argument handling attributes depend upon the value set for the `arg-type` attribute. It specifies the type of argument the option will take. If not present, the option cannot take an argument. If present, it must be an entry in the following table. The first three letters is sufficient.

#### 7.4.6.1 Keyword list

If the `arg-type` is `keyword` (see Section 7.4.6.7 [arg-type keyword], page 94) or `set-membership` (see Section 7.4.6.8 [arg-type set membership], page 94), then you must specify the list of keywords by a series of `keyword` entries. The interface file will contain values for `<OPTN_NAME>_<KEYWORD>` for each keyword entry. `keyword` option types will have an enumeration and `set-membership` option types will have a set of unsigned bits `#define`-d.

If the `arg-type` is specifically `keyword`, you may also add special handling code with a `extra-code` attribute. After `optionEnumerationVal` has converted the input string into an enumeration, you may insert code to process this enumeration value (`pOptDesc->optArg.argEnum`).

#### 7.4.6.2 Option Argument Optional

This attribute indicates that the user does not have to supply an argument for the option. This is only valid if the *arg-type* is `string` (see Section 7.4.6.4 [arg-type string], page 93) or `keyword` (see Section 7.4.6.7 [arg-type keyword], page 94). If it is `keyword`, then this attribute may also specify the default keyword to assume when the argument is not supplied. If left empty, *arg-default* (see Section 7.4.6.3 [arg-default], page 93) or the zero-valued keyword will be used.

This is overridden and the options are required if the libopts library gets configured with `--disable-optional-args`.

#### 7.4.6.3 Default Option Argument Value

This specifies the default option argument value to be used when the option is not specified or preset.

#### 7.4.6.4 Arg Type String

`arg-type = string;`

The argument may be any arbitrary string, though your program or option callback procedure may place additional constraints upon it.

#### 7.4.6.5 Arg Type Number

`arg-type = number;`

The argument must be a correctly formed integer, without any trailing U's or L's. AutoOpts contains a library procedure to convert the string to a number. If you specify range checking with `arg-range` (see below), then AutoOpts produces a special purpose procedure for this option.

'`scaled`' `scaled` marks the option so that suffixes of '`k`', '`K`', '`m`', '`M`', '`g`', '`G`', '`t`', and '`T`' will multiply the given number by a power of 1000 or 1024. Lower case letters scale by a power of 1000 and upper case scale by a power of 1024.

'`arg-range`'
`arg-range` is used to create a callback procedure for validating the range of the option argument. It must match one of the range entries. Each `arg-range` should consist of either an integer by itself or an integer range. The integer range is specified by one or two integers separated by the two character sequence, `->`. Be sure to quote the entire range string. The definitions parser will not accept the range syntax as a single string token.

The generated procedure imposes the range constraints as follows:

- A number by itself will match that one value.
- The high end of the range may not be `INT_MIN`, both for obvious reasons and because that value is used to indicate a single-valued match.
- An omitted lower value implies a lower bound of INT_MIN.
- An omitted upper value implies a upper bound of INT_MAX.
- The argument value is required. It may not be optional.
- The value must match one of the entries. If it can match more than one, then you have redundancies, but no harm will come of it.

#### 7.4.6.6 Arg Type Boolean

`arg-type = boolean;`

The argument will be interpreted and always yield either AG_TRUE or AG_FALSE. False values are the empty string, the number zero, or a string that starts with `f`, `F`, `n` or `N` (representing False or No). Anything else will be interpreted as True.

#### 7.4.6.7 Arg Type Keyword

`arg-type = keyword;`

The argument must match a specified list of strings (see Section 7.4.6.1 [arg-keyword], page 92). Assuming you have named the option, `optn-name`, the strings will be converted into an enumeration of type `te_Optn_Name` with the values `OPTN_NAME_KEYWORD`. If you have **not** specified a default value, the value `OPTN_NAME_UNDEFINED` will be inserted with the value zero. The option will be initialized to that value. You may now use this in your code as follows:

```
te_Optn_Name opt = OPT_VALUE_OPTN_NAME;
switch (opt) {
case OPTN_NAME_UNDEFINED:  /* undefined things */ break;
case OPTN_NAME_KEYWORD:    /* 'keyword' things */ break;
default: /* utterly impossible */ ;
}
```

AutoOpts produces a special purpose procedure for this option.

If you have need for the string name of the selected keyword, you may obtain this with the macro, `OPT_OPTN_NAME_VAL2STR(val)`. The value you pass would normally be `OPT_VALUE_OPTN_NAME`, but anything with numeric value that is legal for `te_Optn_Name` may be passed. Anything out of range will result in the string, `"*INVALID*"` being returned. The strings are read only. It may be used as in:

```
te_Optn_Name opt = OPT_VALUE_OPTN_NAME;
printf( "you selected the %s keyword\n",
        OPT_OPTN_NAME_VAL2STR(opt) );
```

#### 7.4.6.8 Arg Type Set Membership

`arg-type = set;`

The argument must be a list of names each of which must match the strings `"all"`, `"none"` or one of the keywords (see Section 7.4.6.1 [arg-keyword], page 92) specified for this option. `all` will turn on all membership bits and `none` will turn them all off. Specifying one of the keywords will turn on the corresponding set membership bit. Literal numbers may also be used and may, thereby, set or clear more than one bit. Preceding a keyword or literal number with a bang (`!` - exclamation point) will turn the bit(s) off. The number of keywords allowed is constrained by the number of bits in a pointer, as the bit set is kept in a `void*`.

If, for example, you specified `first` in your list of keywords, then you can use the following code to test to see if either `first` or `all` was specified:

```
uintptr_t opt = OPT_VALUE_OPTN_NAME;
if (opt & OPTN_NAME_FIRST)
```

```
/* OPTN_NAME_FIRST bit was set */ ;
```

AutoOpts produces a special purpose procedure for this option.

#### 7.4.6.9 Arg Type Hierarchical

`arg-type = hierarchy;`
`arg-type = nested;`

This denotes an option with a structure-valued argument, a.k.a. "subopts" in `getopts` terminology. The argument is parsed and the values made available to the program via the find and find next calls (See Section 7.5.32.5 [libopts-optionFindValue], page 112, See Section 7.5.32.7 [libopts-optionGetValue], page 112, and see Section 7.5.32.4 [libopts-optionFindNextValue], page 111).

```
tOptionValue * val = optionGetValue(VALUE_OPT_OPTN_NAME, "name");
while (val != NULL) {
  process(val);
  val = optionNextValue(VALUE_OPT_OPTN_NAME, val);
  if (wrong_name(val, "name"))
    break;
}
```

#### 7.4.6.10 Arg Type File Name

`arg-type = file;`

This argument type will have some validations on the argument and, optionally, actually open the file. You must specify several additonal attributes for the option:

'`file-exists`'
: If not specified or empty, then the directory portion of the name is checked. The directory must exist or the argument is rejected and the usage procedure is invoked.

  Otherwise, both the directory as above and the full name is tested for existence. If the value begins with the two letters "no", then the file must not pre-exist. Otherwise, the file is expected to exist.

'`open-file`'
: If not specified or empty, the file is left alone. If the value begins with the four letters "desc"[*riptor*], then `open(2)` is used and `optArg.argFd` is set. Otherwise, the file is opened with `fopen` and `optArg.argFp` is set.

'`file-mode`'
: If "open-file" is set and not empty, then you must specify the open mode. Set the value to the flag bits or mode string as appropriate for the open type.

### 7.4.7 Option Argument Handling

AutoOpts will either specify or automatically generate callback procedures for options that take specialized arguments. The only option argument types that are not specialized are plain string arguments and no argument at all. For options that fall into one of those two categories, you may specify your own callback function, as specified below. If the option takes a string argument, then you may specify that the option is to be handled by

the `libopts` library procedures `stackOptArg()` or `unstackOptArg()` (see below). Finally, `documentation` options (see Section 7.4.5.7 [opt-attr documentation], page 91) may also be marked as `settable` (see Section 7.4.5.3 [opt-attr settable], page 89) and have special callback functions (either `flag-code`, `extract-code`, or `call-proc`).

'`flag-code`'
: statements to execute when the option is encountered. The generated procedure will look like this:

```
static void
doOpt<name>( tOptions* pOptions, tOptDesc* pOptDesc )
{
<flag-code>
}
```

Only certain fields within the `tOptions` and `tOptDesc` structures may be accessed. See Section 7.5.1 [Option Processing Data], page 102.

'`extract-code`'
: This is effectively identical to `flag-code`, except that the source is kept in the output file instead of the definitions file. A long comment is used to demarcate the code. You must not modify that marker. *Before* regenerating the option code file, the old file is renamed from MUMBLE.c to MUMBLE.c.save. The template will be looking there for the text to copy into the new output file.

'`call-proc`'
: external procedure to call when option is encountered. The calling sequence must conform to the sequence defined above for the generated procedure, `doOpt<name>`. It has the same restrictions regarding the fields within the structures passed in as arguments. See Section 7.5.1 [Option Processing Data], page 102.

'`flag-proc`'
: Name of another option whose `flag-code` can be executed when this option is encountered.

'`stack-arg`'
: Call a special library routine to stack the option's arguments. Special macros in the interface file are provided for determining how many of the options were found (`STACKCT_OPT(NAME)`) and to obtain a pointer to a list of pointers to the argument values (`STACKLST_OPT(NAME)`). Obviously, for a stackable argument, the `max` attribute (see Section 7.4.5.2 [Common Attributes], page 88) needs to be set higher than `1`.

If this stacked argument option has a disablement prefix, then the entire stack of arguments will be cleared by specifying the option with that disablement prefix.

'`unstack-arg`'
: Call a special library routine to remove ("unstack") strings from a `stack-arg` option stack. This attribute must name the option that is to be "unstacked". Neither this option nor the stacked argument option it references may be equivalenced to another option.

### 7.4.8 Internationalizing Options

Normally, AutoOpts produces usage text that is difficult to translate. It is pieced together on the fly using words and phrases scattered around here and there, piecing together toe document. This does not translate well.

Incorporated into this package are some ways around the problem. First, you should specify the `full-usage` and `short-usage` program attributes (see Section 7.4.1 [program attributes], page 78). This will enable your translators to translate the usage text as a whole.

Your translators will also be able to translate long option names. The option name translations will then become the names searched for both on the command line and in configuration files. However, it will not affect the names of environment variable names used to configure your program.

If it is considered desireable to keep configuration files in the "C" locale, then several macros are available to suppress or delay the translations of option names at run time. These are all disabled if `ENABLE_NLS` is not defined at compile time. These macros **must** be invoked before the first invocation of `optionProcess`.

'`OPT_NO_XLAT_CFG_NAMES;`'
'`OPT_XLAT_CFG_NAMES;`'
: Disable (or enable) the translations of option names for configuration files. If you enable translation for config files, then they will be translated for command line options.

'`OPT_NO_XLAT_OPT_NAMES;`'
'`OPT_XLAT_OPT_NAMES;`'
: Disable (or enable) the translations of option names for command line processing. If you disable the translation for command line processing, you will also disable it for configuration file processing. Once translated, the option names will remain translated.

### 7.4.9 Man and Info doc Attributes

AutoOpts includes AutoGen templates for producing abbreviated man pages and for producing the invoking section of an info document. To take advantage of these templates, you must add several attributes to your option definitions.

'`doc`'
: First, every `flag` definition *other than* "documentation" definitions, must have a `doc` attribute defined. If the option takes an argument, then it will need an `arg-name` attribute as well. The `doc` text should be in plain sentences with minimal formatting. The Texinfo commands `@code`, and `@var` will have its enclosed text made into **\fB** entries in the man page, and the `@file` text will be made into **\fI** entries. The `arg-name` attribute is used to display the option's argument in the man page.

  Options marked with the "documentation" attribute are for documenting the usage text. All other options should have the "doc" attribute in order to document the usage of the option in the generated man pages.

'arg-name'
: If an option has an argument, the argument should have a name for documentation purposes. It will default to arg-type, but it will likely be clearer with something else like, file-name instead of string (the type).

'prog-man-descrip'
'prog-info-descrip'
: Then, you need to supply a brief description of what your program does. If you already have a detail definition, this may be sufficient. If not, or if you need special formatting for one of the manual formats, then you will need either a definition for prog-man-descrip or prog-info-descrip or both. These will be inserted verbatim in the man page document and the info document, respectively.

'man-doc'
: Finally, if you need to add man page sections like SEE ALSO or USAGE or other, put that text in a man-doc definition. This text will be inserted verbatim in the man page after the OPTIONS section and before the AUTHOR section.

### 7.4.10 Automatically Supported Options

AutoOpts provides automated support for six options. help and more-help are always provided. version is provided if version is defined in the option definitions See Section 7.4.1 [program attributes], page 78. save-opts and load-opts are provided if at least one homerc is defined See Section 7.4.1 [program attributes], page 78.

Below are the option names and flag values. The flags are activated if and only if at least one user-defined option also uses a flag value. These flags may be deleted or changed to characters of your choosing by specifying xxx-value = "y";, where xxx is one of the five names below and y is either empty or the character of your choice. For example, to change the help flag from ? to h, specify help-value = "h";; and to require that save-opts be specified only with its long option name, specify save-opts-value = "";.

With the exception of the load-opts option, none of these automatically supported options will be recognized in configuration files or environment variables.

'help -?'
: This option will immediately invoke the USAGE() procedure and display the usage line, a description of each option with its description and option usage information. This is followed by the contents of the definition of the detail text macro.

'more-help -!'
: This option is identical to the help option, except that the output is passed through a pager program. (more by default, or the program identified by the PAGER environment variable.)

'usage -u'
: This option must be requested by specifying, usage-opt in the option definition file. It will produce abbreviated help text to 'stdout' and exit with zero status (EXIT_SUCCESS).

'version -v'
: This will print the program name, title and version. If it is followed by the letter c and a value for copyright and owner have been provided, then the

copyright will be printed, too. If it is followed by the letter `n`, then the full copyright notice (if available) will be printed.

'`save-opts ->`'

This option will cause the option state to be printed in the configuration file format when option processing is done but not yet verified for consistency. The program will terminate successfully without running when this has completed. Note that for most shells you will have to quote or escape the flag character to restrict special meanings to the shell.

The output file will be the configuration file name (default or provided by `rcfile`) in the last directory named in a `homerc` definition.

This option may be set from within your program by invoking the `"SET_OPT_SAVE_OPTS(filename)"` macro (see Section 7.5.20 [SET_OPT_name], page 106). Invoking this macro will set the file name for saving the option processing state, but the state will **not** actually be saved. You must call `optionSaveFile` to do that (see Section 7.5.32.13 [libopts-optionSaveFile], page 115). **CAVEAT:** if, after invoking this macro, you call `optionProcess`, the option processing state will be saved to this file and `optionProcess` will not return. You may wish to invoke `CLEAR_OPT( SAVE_OPTS )` (see Section 7.5.2 [CLEAR_OPT], page 103) beforehand.

'`load-opts -<`'

This option will load options from the named file. They will be treated exactly as if they were loaded from the normally found configuration files, but will not be loaded until the option is actually processed. This can also be used within another configuration file, causing them to nest. This is the **only** option that can be activated inside of config files or with environment variables.

Specifying the negated form of the option (`--no-load-opts`) will suppress the processing of configuration files and environment variables.

### 7.4.11 Library of Standard Options

AutoOpts has developed a set of standardized options. You may incorporate these options in your program simply by *first* adding a `#define` for the options you want, and then the line,

```
#include stdoptions.def
```

in your option definitions. The supported options are specified thus:

```
#define DEBUG
#define DIRECTORY
#define DRY_RUN
#define INPUT
#define INTERACTIVE
#define OUTPUT
#define WARN

#define SILENT
#define QUIET
#define BRIEF
```

```
#define VERBOSE
```

By default, only the long form of the option will be available. To specify the short (flag) form, suffix these names with `_FLAG`. e.g.,

```
#define DEBUG_FLAG
```

`--silent`, `--quiet`, `--brief` and `--verbose` are related in that they all indicate some level of diagnostic output. These options are all designed to conflict with each other. Instead of four different options, however, several levels can be incorporated by `#define`-ing `VERBOSE_ENUM`. In conjunction with `VERBOSE`, it incorporates the notion of *5* levels in an enumeration: `silent`, `quiet`, `brief`, `informative` and `verbose`; with the default being `brief`.

Here is an example program that uses the following set of definitions:

```
AutoGen Definitions options;

prog-name  = default-test;
prog-title = 'Default Option Example';
homerc     = '$$/../share/default-test', '$HOME', '.';
environrc;
long-opts;
gnu-usage;
usage-opt;
version    = '1.0';
main = {
  main-type = shell-process;
};
#define DEBUG_FLAG
#define WARN_FLAG
#define WARN_LEVEL
#define VERBOSE_FLAG
#define VERBOSE_ENUM
#define DRY_RUN_FLAG
#define OUTPUT_FLAG
#define INPUT_FLAG
#define DIRECTORY_FLAG
#define INTERACTIVE_FLAG
#include stdoptions.def
```

Running a few simple commands on that definition file:

```
autogen default-test.def
copts="-DTEST_DEFAULT_TEST_OPTS `autoopts-config cflags`"
lopts="`autoopts-config ldflags`"
cc -o default-test ${copts} default-test.c ${lopts}
```

Yields a program which, when run with '`--help`', prints out:

```
default-test - Default Option Example - Ver. 1.0
USAGE:  default-test [ -<flag> [<val>] | --<name>[{=| }<val>] ]...
```

```
The following options are commonly used and are provided and supported
by AutoOpts:

   -D, --debug                run program with debugging info
   -V, --verbose=KWd          run program with progress info
   -w, --warn=num             specify a warning-level threshhold
                                - disabled as --no-warn
   -R, --dry-run              program will make no changes
   -I, --interactive=str      prompt for confirmation
   -i, --input=str            redirect input from file
   -o, --output=str           redirect output to file
   -d, --directory=str        use specified dir for I/O

version and help options:

   -v, --version[=arg]        Output version information and exit
   -?, --help                 Display usage information and exit
   -!, --more-help            Extended usage information passed thru pager
   -u, --usage                Abbreviated usage to stdout
   ->, --save-opts[=arg]      Save the option state to a config file
   -<, --load-opts=str        Load options from a config file
                                - disabled as --no-load-opts
                                - may appear multiple times

Options are specified by doubled hyphens and their name
or by a single hyphen and the flag character.

The following option preset mechanisms are supported:
 - reading file $$/../share/default-test
 - reading file $HOME
 - reading file /home/bkorb/ag/ag/doc/.default_testrc
 - examining environment variables named DEFAULT_TEST_*

The valid "verbose" option keywords are:
  silent quiet brief informative verbose
  or an integer between 0 and 4
```

## 7.5 Programmatic Interface

The user interface for access to the argument information is completely defined in the generated header file and in the portions of the distributed file "options.h" that are marked "public".

In the following macros, text marked `<NAME>` or `name` is the name of the option **in upper case** and **segmented with underscores** `_`. The macros and enumerations defined in the options header (interface) file are used as follows:

To see how these `#define` macros are used in a program, the reader is referred to the several '`opts.h`' files included with the AutoGen sources.

### 7.5.1 Data for Option Processing

This section describes the data that may be accessed from within the option processing callback routines. The following fields may be used in the following ways and may be used for read only. The first set is addressed from the `tOptDesc*` pointer:

'`optIndex`'
'`optValue`'
: These may be used by option procedures to determine which option they are working on (in case they handle several options).

'`optActualIndex`'
'`optActualValue`'
: These may be used by option procedures to determine which option was used to set the current option. This may be different from the above if the options are members of an equivalence class.

'`optOccCt`'
: If AutoOpts is processing command line arguments, then this value will contain the current occurrence count. During the option preset phase (reading configuration files and examining environment variables), the value is zero.

'`fOptState`'
: The field may be tested for the following bit values (prefix each name with `OPTST_`, e.g. `OPTST_INIT`):

  '`INIT`' Initial compiled value. As a bit test, it will always yield FALSE.

  '`SET`' The option was set via the `SET_OPT()` macro.

  '`PRESET`' The option was set via a configuration file.

  '`DEFINED`' The option was set via a command line option.

  '`SET_MASK`'
  : This is a mask of flags that show the set state, one of the above four values.

  '`EQUIVALENCE`'
  : This bit is set when the option was selected by an equivalenced option.

  '`DISABLED`'
  : This bit is set if the option is to be disabled. (Meaning it was a long option prefixed by the disablement prefix, or the option has not been specified yet and initializes as `disabled`.)

  As an example of how this might be used, in AutoGen I want to allow template writers to specify that the template output can be left in a writable or read-only state. To support this, there is a Guile function named `set-writable` (see Section 3.4.40 [SCM set-writable], page 33). Also, I provide for command options `--writable` and `--not-writable`. I give precedence to command line and RC file options, thus:

```
switch (STATE_OPT( WRITABLE )) {
case OPTST_DEFINED:
case OPTST_PRESET:
    fprintf( stderr, zOverrideWarn, pCurTemplate->pzFileName,
             pCurMacro->lineNo );
    break;

default:
    if (gh_boolean_p( set ) && (set == SCM_BOOL_F))
        CLEAR_OPT( WRITABLE );
    else
        SET_OPT_WRITABLE;
}
```

'`pzLastArg`'
: Pointer to the latest argument string. BEWARE If the argument type is numeric, an enumeration or a bit mask, then this will be the argument **value** and not a pointer to a string.

The following two fields are addressed from the `tOptions*` pointer:

'`pzProgName`'
: Points to a NUL-terminated string containing the current program name, as retrieved from the argument vector.

'`pzProgPath`'
: Points to a NUL-terminated string containing the full path of the current program, as retrieved from the argument vector. (If available on your system.)

Note these fields get filled in during the first call to `optionProcess()`. All other fields are private, for the exclusive use of AutoOpts code and are subject to change.

### 7.5.2 CLEAR_OPT( <NAME> ) - Clear Option Markings

Make as if the option had never been specified. `HAVE_OPT(<NAME>)` will yield `FALSE` after invoking this macro.

### 7.5.3 COUNT_OPT( <NAME> ) - Definition Count

This macro will tell you how many times the option was specified on the command line. It does not include counts of preset options.

```
if (COUNT_OPT( NAME ) != desired-count) {
    make-an-undesirable-message.
}
```

### 7.5.4 DESC( <NAME> ) - Option Descriptor

This macro is used internally by other AutoOpt macros. It is not for general use. It is used to obtain the option description corresponding to its **UPPER CASED** option name argument. This is primarily used in other macro definitions.

### 7.5.5 DISABLE_OPT_name - Disable an option

This macro is emitted if it is both settable and it can be disabled. If it cannot be disabled, it may always be CLEAR-ed (see above).

The form of the macro will actually depend on whether the option is equivalenced to another, and/or has an assigned handler procedure. Unlike the `SET_OPT` macro, this macro does not allow an option argument.

```
DISABLE_OPT_NAME;
```

### 7.5.6 ENABLED_OPT( <NAME> ) - Is Option Enabled?

Yields true if the option defaults to disabled and `ISUNUSED_OPT()` would yield true. It also yields true if the option has been specified with a disablement prefix, disablement value or the `DISABLE_OPT_NAME` macro was invoked.

### 7.5.7 ERRSKIP_OPTERR - Ignore Option Errors

When it is necessary to continue (return to caller) on option errors, invoke this option. It is reversible. See Section 7.5.8 [ERRSTOP_OPTERR], page 104.

### 7.5.8 ERRSTOP_OPTERR - Stop on Errors

After invoking this macro, if `optionProcess()` encounters an error, it will call `exit(1)` rather than return. This is the default processing mode. It can be overridden by specifying `allow-errors` in the definitions file, or invoking the macro See Section 7.5.7 [ERRSKIP_OPTERR], page 104.

### 7.5.9 HAVE_OPT( <NAME> ) - Have this option?

This macro yields true if the option has been specified in any fashion at all. It is used thus:

```
if (HAVE_OPT( NAME )) {
    <do-things-associated-with-opt-name>;
}
```

### 7.5.10 ISSEL_OPT( <NAME> ) - Is Option Selected?

This macro yields true if the option has been specified either on the command line or via a SET/DISABLE macro.

### 7.5.11 ISUNUSED_OPT( <NAME> ) - Never Specified?

This macro yields true if the option has never been specified, or has been cleared via the `CLEAR_OPT()` macro.

### 7.5.12 OPTION_CT - Full Count of Options

The full count of all options, both those defined and those generated automatically by AutoOpts. This is primarily used to initialize the program option descriptor structure.

### 7.5.13 OPT_ARG( <NAME> ) - Option Argument String

The option argument value as a pointer to string. Note that argument values that have been specified as numbers are stored as numbers or keywords. For such options, use instead the `OPT_VALUE_name` define. It is used thus:

```
if (HAVE_OPT( NAME )) {
    char* p = OPT_ARG( NAME );
    <do-things-with-opt-name-argument-string>;
}
```

### 7.5.14 OPT_NO_XLAT_CFG_NAMES - option name xlation

Invoking this macro will disable the translation of option names only while processing configuration files and environment variables. This must be invoked before the first call to `optionProcess`.. You need not invoke this if your option definition file contains the attribute assignment, "`no-xlate = opt-cfg;`".

### 7.5.15 OPT_NO_XLAT_OPT_NAMES - option name xlation

Invoking this macro will completely disable the translation of option names. This must be invoked before the first call to `optionProcess`. You need not invoke this if your option definition file contains the attribute assignment, "`no-xlate = opt;`".

### 7.5.16 OPT_VALUE_name - Option Argument Value

This macro gets emitted only for options that take numeric, keyword or set membership arguments. The macro yields a word-sized integer containing the enumeration, bit set or numeric value for the option argument.

```
int opt_val = OPT_VALUE_name;
```

### 7.5.17 OPT_XLAT_CFG_NAMES - option name xlation

If `ENABLE_NLS` is defined, this macro will cause the translation of option names to happen before starting the processing of configuration files and environment variables. This will change the recognition of options within the `$PROGRAMNAME` environment variable, but will not alter the names used for setting options via `$PROGRAMNAME_name` environment variables.

This must be invoked before the first call to `optionProcess`. You might need to use this macro if your option definition file contains the attribute assignment, "`no-xlate = opt;`" or "`no-xlate = opt-cfg;`", and you have determined in some way that you wish to override that.

### 7.5.18 OPT_XLAT_OPT_NAMES - option name xlation

If `ENABLE_NLS` is defined, translate the option names before processing the command line options. Long option names may thus be localized. (If the names were translated before configuration processing, they will not be re-translated.)

This must be invoked before the first call to `optionProcess`. You might need to use this macro if your option definition file contains the attribute assignment, "`no-xlate = opt;`" and you have determined in some way that you wish to override that.

### 7.5.19 RESTART_OPT( n ) - Resume Option Processing

If option processing has stopped (either because of an error or something was encountered that looked like a program argument), it can be resumed by providing this macro with the index `n` of the next option to process and calling `optionProcess()` again.

### 7.5.20 SET_OPT_name - Force an option to be set

This macro gets emitted only when the given option has the `settable` attribute specified.

The form of the macro will actually depend on whether the option is equivalenced to another, has an option argument and/or has an assigned handler procedure. If the option has an argument, then this macro will too. Beware that the argument is not reallocated, so the value must not be on the stack or deallocated in any other way for as long as the value might get referenced.

If you have supplied at least one '`homerc`' file (see Section 7.4.1 [program attributes], page 78), this macro will be emitted for the `--save-opts` option.

```
SET_OPT_SAVE_OPTS( "filename" );
```

See Section 7.4.10 [automatic options], page 98, for a discussion of the implications of using this particular example.

### 7.5.21 STACKCT_OPT( <NAME> ) - Stacked Arg Count

When the option handling attribute is specified as `stack_arg`, this macro may be used to determine how many of them actually got stacked.

Do not use this on options that have not been stacked or has not been specified (the `stack_arg` attribute must have been specified, and `HAVE_OPT(<NAME>)` must yield TRUE). Otherwise, you will likely seg fault.

```
if (HAVE_OPT( NAME )) {
    int     ct = STACKCT_OPT(  NAME );
    char**  pp = STACKLST_OPT( NAME );

    do  {
        char* p = *pp++;
        do-things-with-p;
    } while (--ct > 0);
}
```

### 7.5.22 STACKLST_OPT( <NAME> ) - Argument Stack

The address of the list of pointers to the option arguments. The pointers are ordered by the order in which they were encountered in the option presets and command line processing.

Do not use this on options that have not been stacked or has not been specified (the `stack_arg` attribute must have been specified, and `HAVE_OPT(<OPTION>)` must yield TRUE). Otherwise, you will likely seg fault.

```
if (HAVE_OPT( NAME )) {
    int     ct = STACKCT_OPT(  NAME );
    char**  pp = STACKLST_OPT( NAME );

    do  {
        char* p = *pp++;
        do-things-with-p;
    } while (--ct > 0);
}
```

### 7.5.23 START_OPT - Restart Option Processing

This is just a shortcut for RESTART_OPT(1) (See Section 7.5.19 [RESTART_OPT], page 105.)

### 7.5.24 STATE_OPT( <NAME> ) - Option State

If you need to know if an option was set because of presetting actions (configuration file processing or environment variables), versus a command line entry versus one of the SET/DISABLE macros, then use this macro. It will yield one of four values: `OPTST_INIT`, `OPTST_SET`, `OPTST_PRESET` or `OPTST_DEFINED`. It is used thus:

```
switch (STATE_OPT( NAME )) {
    case OPTST_INIT:
        not-preset, set or on the command line.  (unless CLEAR-ed)

    case OPTST_SET:
        option set via the SET_OPT_NAME() macro.

    case OPTST_PRESET:
        option set via an configuration file or environment variable

    case OPTST_DEFINED:
        option set via a command line option.

    default:
        cannot happen :)
}
```

### 7.5.25 USAGE( exit-code ) - Usage invocation macro

This macro invokes the procedure registered to display the usage text. Normally, this will be `optionUsage` from the AutoOpts library, but you may select another procedure by specifying `usage = "proc_name"` program attribute. This procedure must take two arguments first, a pointer to the option descriptor, and second the exit code. The macro supplies the option descriptor automatically. This routine is expected to call `exit(3)` with the provided exit code.

The `optionUsage` routine also behaves differently depending on the exit code.:

`EXIT_SUCCESS (the value zero)`
: It is assumed that full usage help has been requested. Consequently, more information is provided than when displaying usage and exiting with a non-zero exit code. Output will be sent to '`stdout`' and the program will exit with a zero status code.

`EX_USAGE (64)`
: The abbreviated usage will be printed to '`stdout`' and the program will exit with a zero status code. "EX_USAGE" may or may not be 64. If your system provides "/usr/include/sysexits.h" that has a different value, then that value will be used.

`any other value`
: The abbreviated usage will be printed to stderr and the program will exit with the provided status code.

### 7.5.26 VALUE_OPT_name - Option Flag Value

This is a #define for the flag character used to specify an option on the command line. If `value` was not specified for the option, then it is a unique number associated with the option. `option value` refers to this value, `option argument` refers to the (optional) argument to the option.

```
switch (WHICH_OPT_OTHER_OPT) {
case VALUE_OPT_NAME:
    this-option-was-really-opt-name;
case VALUE_OPT_OTHER_OPT:
    this-option-was-really-other-opt;
}
```

### 7.5.27 VERSION - Version and Full Version

If the `version` attribute is defined for the program, then a stringified version will be #defined as PROGRAM_VERSION and PROGRAM_FULL_VERSION. PROGRAM_FULL_VERSION is used for printing the program version in response to the version option. The version option is automatically supplied in response to this attribute, too.

You may access PROGRAM_VERSION via `programOptions.pzFullVersion`.

### 7.5.28 WHICH_IDX_name - Which Equivalenced Index

This macro gets emitted only for equivalenced-to options. It is used to obtain the index for the one of the several equivalence class members set the equivalenced-to option.

```
switch (WHICH_IDX_OTHER_OPT) {
case INDEX_OPT_NAME:
    this-option-was-really-opt-name;
case INDEX_OPT_OTHER_OPT:
    this-option-was-really-other-opt;
}
```

### 7.5.29 WHICH_OPT_name - Which Equivalenced Option

This macro gets emitted only for equivalenced-to options. It is used to obtain the value code for the one of the several equivalence class members set the equivalenced-to option.

```
switch (WHICH_OPT_OTHER_OPT) {
case VALUE_OPT_NAME:
    this-option-was-really-opt-name;
case VALUE_OPT_OTHER_OPT:
    this-option-was-really-other-opt;
}
```

### 7.5.30 teOptIndex - Option Index and Enumeration

This enum defines the complete set of options, both user specified and automatically provided. This can be used, for example, to distinguish which of the equivalenced options was actually used.

```
switch (pOptDesc->optActualIndex) {
case INDEX_OPT_FIRST:
    stuff;
case INDEX_OPT_DIFFERENT:
    different-stuff;
default:
    unknown-things;
}
```

### 7.5.31 OPTIONS_STRUCT_VERSION - active version

You will not actually need to reference this value, but you need to be aware that it is there. It is the first value in the option descriptor that you pass to `optionProcess`. It contains a magic number and version information. Normally, you should be able to work with a more recent option library than the one you compiled with. However, if the library is changed incompatibly, then the library will detect the out of date magic marker, explain the difficulty and exit. You will then need to rebuild and recompile your option definitions. This has rarely been necessary.

### 7.5.32 libopts External Procedures

These are the routines that libopts users may call directly from their code. There are several other routines that can be called by code generated by the libopts option templates, but they are not to be called from any other user code. The '`options.h`' header is fairly clear about this, too.

This subsection was automatically generated by AutoGen using extracted information and the aginfo3.tpl template.

#### 7.5.32.1 ao_string_tokenize

tokenize an input string

Usage:

```
token_list_t* res = ao_string_tokenize( string );
```

Where the arguments are:

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| string | `char const*` | string to be tokenized |
| returns | token_list_t* | pointer to a structure that lists each token |

This function will convert one input string into a list of strings. The list of strings is derived by separating the input based on white space separation. However, if the input contains either single or double quote characters, then the text after that character up to a matching quote will become the string in the list.

The returned pointer should be deallocated with `free(3C)` when are done using the data. The data are placed in a single block of allocated memory. Do not deallocate individual token/strings.

The structure pointed to will contain at least these two fields:

'`tkn_ct`' The number of tokens found in the input string.

'`tok_list`'
An array of `tkn_ct + 1` pointers to substring tokens, with the last pointer set to NULL.

There are two types of quoted strings: single quoted (`'`) and double quoted (`"`). Singly quoted strings are fairly raw in that escape characters (`\\`) are simply another character, except when preceding the following characters:

```
\\  double backslashes reduce to one
'   incorporates the single quote into the string
\n  suppresses both the backslash and newline character
```

Double quote strings are formed according to the rules of string constants in ANSI-C programs.

NULL is returned and `errno` will be set to indicate the problem:

- `EINVAL` - There was an unterminated quoted string.
- `ENOENT` - The input string was empty.
- `ENOMEM` - There is not enough memory.

### 7.5.32.2 configFileLoad

parse a configuration file

Usage:

```
const tOptionValue* res = configFileLoad( pzFile );
```

Where the arguments are:

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| pzFile | `char const*` | the file to load |
| returns | const tOptionValue* | An allocated, compound value structure |

This routine will load a named configuration file and parse the text as a hierarchically valued option. The option descriptor created from an option definition file is not used via this interface. The returned value is "named" with the input file name and is of type `"OPARG_TYPE_HIERARCHY"`. It may be used in calls to `optionGetValue()`, `optionNextValue()` and `optionUnloadNested()`.

If the file cannot be loaded or processed, `NULL` is returned and *errno* is set. It may be set by a call to either `open(2)` `mmap(2)` or other file system calls, or it may be:

- `ENOENT` - the file was empty.
- `EINVAL` - the file contents are invalid – not properly formed.
- `ENOMEM` - not enough memory to allocate the needed structures.

### 7.5.32.3 optionFileLoad

Load the locatable config files, in order

Usage:

```
int res = optionFileLoad( pOpts, pzProg );
```

Where the arguments are:

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| pOpts | `tOptions*` | program options descriptor |
| pzProg | `char const*` | program name |
| returns | int | 0 -> SUCCESS, -1 -> FAILURE |

This function looks in all the specified directories for a configuration file ("rc" file or "ini" file) and processes any found twice. The first time through, they are processed in reverse order (last file first). At that time, only "immediate action" configurables are processed. For example, if the last named file specifies not processing any more configuration files, then no more configuration files will be processed. Such an option in the **first** named directory will have no effect.

Once the immediate action configurables have been handled, then the directories are handled in normal, forward order. In that way, later config files can override the settings of earlier config files.

See the AutoOpts documentation for a thorough discussion of the config file format.

Configuration files not found or not decipherable are simply ignored.

Returns the value, "-1" if the program options descriptor is out of date or indecipherable. Otherwise, the value "0" will always be returned.

### 7.5.32.4 optionFindNextValue

find a hierarcicaly valued option instance

Usage:

```
const tOptionValue* res = optionFindNextValue( pOptDesc, pPrevVal, name, value );
```

Where the arguments are:

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| pOptDesc | `const tOptDesc*` | an option with a nested arg type |
| pPrevVal | `const tOptionValue*` | the last entry |
| name | `char const*` | name of value to find |
| value | `char const*` | the matching value |
| returns | const tOptionValue* | a compound value structure |

This routine will find the next entry in a nested value option or configurable. It will search through the list and return the next entry that matches the criteria.

The returned result is NULL and errno is set:

- `EINVAL` - the `pOptValue` does not point to a valid hierarchical option value.
- `ENOENT` - no entry matched the given name.

### 7.5.32.5 optionFindValue

find a hierarcicaly valued option instance

Usage:

```
const tOptionValue* res = optionFindValue( pOptDesc, name, value );
```

Where the arguments are:

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| pOptDesc | `const tOptDesc*` | an option with a nested arg type |
| name | `char const*` | name of value to find |
| value | `char const*` | the matching value |
| returns | const tOptionValue* | a compound value structure |

This routine will find an entry in a nested value option or configurable. It will search through the list and return a matching entry.

The returned result is NULL and errno is set:

- `EINVAL` - the `pOptValue` does not point to a valid hierarchical option value.
- `ENOENT` - no entry matched the given name.

### 7.5.32.6 optionFree

free allocated option processing memory

Usage:

```
optionFree( pOpts );
```

Where the arguments are:

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| pOpts | `tOptions*` | program options descriptor |

AutoOpts sometimes allocates memory and puts pointers to it in the option state structures. This routine deallocates all such memory.

As long as memory has not been corrupted, this routine is always successful.

### 7.5.32.7 optionGetValue

get a specific value from a hierarcical list

Usage:

```
const tOptionValue* res = optionGetValue( pOptValue, valueName );
```

Where the arguments are:

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| pOptValue | `const tOptionValue*` | a hierarchcal value |
| valueName | `char const*` | name of value to get |
| returns | const tOptionValue* | a compound value structure |

This routine will find an entry in a nested value option or configurable. If "valueName" is NULL, then the first entry is returned. Otherwise, the first entry with a name that exactly matches the argument will be returned.

The returned result is NULL and errno is set:

- `EINVAL` - the `pOptValue` does not point to a valid hierarchical option value.
- `ENOENT` - no entry matched the given name.

### 7.5.32.8 optionLoadLine

process a string for an option name and value

Usage:

```
optionLoadLine( pOpts, pzLine );
```

Where the arguments are:

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| pOpts | `tOptions*` | program options descriptor |
| pzLine | `char const*` | NUL-terminated text |

This is a client program callable routine for setting options from, for example, the contents of a file that they read in. Only one option may appear in the text. It will be treated as a normal (non-preset) option.

When passed a pointer to the option struct and a string, it will find the option named by the first token on the string and set the option argument to the remainder of the string. The caller must NUL terminate the string. Any embedded new lines will be included in the option argument. If the input looks like one or more quoted strings, then the input will be "cooked". The "cooking" is identical to the string formation used in AutoGen definition files (see Section 3.3.2 [basic expression], page 24), except that you may not use backquotes.

Invalid options are silently ignored. Invalid option arguments will cause a warning to print, but the function should return.

### 7.5.32.9 optionNextValue

get the next value from a hierarchical list

Usage:

```
const tOptionValue* res = optionNextValue( pOptValue, pOldValue );
```

Where the arguments are:

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| pOptValue | `const tOptionValue*` | a hierarchcal list value |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| pOldValue | `const tOptionValue*` | a value from this list |
| returns | const tOptionValue* | a compound value structure |

This routine will return the next entry after the entry passed in. At the end of the list, NULL will be returned. If the entry is not found on the list, NULL will be returned and "*errno*" will be set to EINVAL. The "*pOldValue*" must have been gotten from a prior call to this routine or to "`opitonGetValue()`".

The returned result is NULL and errno is set:

- `EINVAL` - the `pOptValue` does not point to a valid hierarchical option value or `pOldValue` does not point to a member of that option value.
- `ENOENT` - the supplied `pOldValue` pointed to the last entry.

### 7.5.32.10 optionOnlyUsage

Print usage text for just the options

Usage:

```
optionOnlyUsage( pOpts, ex_code );
```

Where the arguments are:

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| pOpts | `tOptions*` | program options descriptor |
| ex_code | `int` | exit code for calling exit(3) |

This routine will print only the usage for each option. This function may be used when the emitted usage must incorporate information not available to AutoOpts.

### 7.5.32.11 optionProcess

this is the main option processing routine

Usage:

```
int res = optionProcess( pOpts, argc, argv );
```

Where the arguments are:

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| pOpts | `tOptions*` | program options descriptor |
| argc | `int` | program arg count |
| argv | `char**` | program arg vector |
| returns | int | the count of the arguments processed |

This is the main entry point for processing options. It is intended that this procedure be called once at the beginning of the execution of a program. Depending on options selected earlier, it is sometimes necessary to stop and restart option processing, or to select completely different sets of options. This can be done easily, but you generally do not want to do this.

The number of arguments processed always includes the program name. If one of the arguments is "–", then it is counted and the processing stops. If an error was encountered and errors are to be tolerated, then the returned value is the index of the argument causing the error. A hyphen by itself ("-") will also cause processing to stop and will *not* be counted among the processed arguments. A hyphen by itself is treated as an operand. Encountering an operand stops option processing.

Errors will cause diagnostics to be printed. `exit(3)` may or may not be called. It depends upon whether or not the options were generated with the "allow-errors" attribute, or if the ERRSKIP_OPTERR or ERRSTOP_OPTERR macros were invoked.

### 7.5.32.12 optionRestore

restore option state from memory copy

Usage:

```
optionRestore( pOpts );
```

Where the arguments are:

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| pOpts | `tOptions*` | program options descriptor |

Copy back the option state from saved memory. The allocated memory is left intact, so this routine can be called repeatedly without having to call optionSaveState again. If you are restoring a state that was saved before the first call to optionProcess(3AO), then you may change the contents of the argc/argv parameters to optionProcess.

If you have not called `optionSaveState` before, a diagnostic is printed to `stderr` and exit is called.

### 7.5.32.13 optionSaveFile

saves the option state to a file

Usage:

```
optionSaveFile( pOpts );
```

Where the arguments are:

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| pOpts | `tOptions*` | program options descriptor |

This routine will save the state of option processing to a file. The name of that file can be specified with the argument to the `--save-opts` option, or by appending the `rcfile` attribute to the last `homerc` attribute. If no `rcfile` attribute was specified, it will default to *.programnamerc*. If you wish to specify another file, you should invoke the `SET_OPT_SAVE_OPTS(` *filename* `)` macro.

If no `homerc` file was specified, this routine will silently return and do nothing. If the output file cannot be created or updated, a message will be printed to `stderr` and the routine will return.

### 7.5.32.14 optionSaveState

saves the option state to memory

Usage:

```
optionSaveState( pOpts );
```

Where the arguments are:

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| pOpts | `tOptions*` | program options descriptor |

This routine will allocate enough memory to save the current option processing state. If this routine has been called before, that memory will be reused. You may only save one copy of the option state. This routine may be called before optionProcess(3AO). If you do call it before the first call to optionProcess, then you may also change the contents of argc/argv after you call optionRestore(3AO)

In fact, more strongly put: it is safest to only use this function before having processed any options. In particular, the saving and restoring of stacked string arguments and hierarchical values is disabled. The values are not saved.

If it fails to allocate the memory, it will print a message to stderr and exit. Otherwise, it will always succeed.

### 7.5.32.15 optionUnloadNested

Deallocate the memory for a nested value

Usage:

```
optionUnloadNested( pOptVal );
```

Where the arguments are:

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| pOptVal | `tOptionValue const *` | the hierarchical value |

A nested value needs to be deallocated. The pointer passed in should have been gotten from a call to `configFileLoad()` (See see Section 7.5.32.2 [libopts-configFileLoad], page 110).

### 7.5.32.16 optionVersion

return the compiled AutoOpts version number

Usage:

```
char const* res = optionVersion();
```

Where the arguments are:

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| returns | char const* | the version string in constant memory |

Returns the full version string compiled into the library. The returned string cannot be modified.

### 7.5.32.17 pathfind

fild a file in a list of directories

Usage:

```
char* res = pathfind( path, file, mode );
```

Where the arguments are:

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| path | `char const*` | colon separated list of search directories |
| file | `char const*` | the name of the file to look for |
| mode | `char const*` | the mode bits that must be set to match |
| returns | char* | the path to the located file |

pathfind looks for a a file with name "FILE" and "MODE" access along colon delimited "PATH", and returns the full pathname as a string, or NULL if not found. If "FILE" contains a slash, then it is treated as a relative or absolute path and "PATH" is ignored.

**NOTE**: this function is compiled into '`libopts`' only if it is not natively supplied.

The "MODE" argument is a string of option letters chosen from the list below:

```
Letter    Meaning
r         readable
w         writable
x         executable
f         normal file       (NOT IMPLEMENTED)
b         block special     (NOT IMPLEMENTED)
c         character special (NOT IMPLEMENTED)
d         directory         (NOT IMPLEMENTED)
p         FIFO (pipe)       (NOT IMPLEMENTED)
u         set user ID bit   (NOT IMPLEMENTED)
g         set group ID bit  (NOT IMPLEMENTED)
k         sticky bit        (NOT IMPLEMENTED)
s         size nonzero      (NOT IMPLEMENTED)
```

returns NULL if the file is not found.

### 7.5.32.18 strequate

map a list of characters to the same value

Usage:

```
strequate( ch_list );
```

Where the arguments are:

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| ch_list | `char const*` | characters to equivalence |

Each character in the input string get mapped to the first character in the string. This function name is mapped to option_strequate so as to not conflict with the POSIX name space.

none.

### 7.5.32.19 streqvcmp

compare two strings with an equivalence mapping

Usage:

```
int res = streqvcmp( str1, str2 );
```

Where the arguments are:

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| str1 | `char const*` | first string |
| str2 | `char const*` | second string |
| returns | int | the difference between two differing characters |

Using a character mapping, two strings are compared for "equivalence". Each input character is mapped to a comparison character and the mapped-to characters are compared for the two NUL terminated input strings. This function name is mapped to option_streqvcmp so as to not conflict with the POSIX name space.

none checked. Caller responsible for seg faults.

### 7.5.32.20 streqvmap

Set the character mappings for the streqv functions

Usage:

```
streqvmap( From, To, ct );
```

Where the arguments are:

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| From | `char` | Input character |
| To | `char` | Mapped-to character |
| ct | `int` | compare length |

Set the character mapping. If the count (`ct`) is set to zero, then the map is cleared by setting all entries in the map to their index value. Otherwise, the `"From"` character is mapped to the `"To"` character. If `ct` is greater than 1, then `From` and `To` are incremented and the process repeated until `ct` entries have been set. For example,

```
streqvmap( 'a', 'A', 26 );
```

will alter the mapping so that all English lower case letters will map to upper case.

This function name is mapped to option_streqvmap so as to not conflict with the POSIX name space.

none.

#### 7.5.32.21 strneqvcmp

compare two strings with an equivalence mapping

Usage:

```
int res = strneqvcmp( str1, str2, ct );
```

Where the arguments are:

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| str1 | `char const*` | first string |
| str2 | `char const*` | second string |
| ct | `int` | compare length |
| returns | int | the difference between two differing characters |

Using a character mapping, two strings are compared for "equivalence". Each input character is mapped to a comparison character and the mapped-to characters are compared for the two NUL terminated input strings. The comparison is limited to `ct` bytes. This function name is mapped to option_strneqvcmp so as to not conflict with the POSIX name space.

none checked. Caller responsible for seg faults.

#### 7.5.32.22 strtransform

convert a string into its mapped-to value

Usage:

```
strtransform( dest, src );
```

Where the arguments are:

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| dest | `char*` | output string |
| src | `char const*` | input string |

Each character in the input string is mapped and the mapped-to character is put into the output. This function name is mapped to option_strtransform so as to not conflict with the POSIX name space.

none.

## 7.6 Multi-Threading

AutoOpts was designed to configure a program for running. This generally happens before much real work has been started. Consequently, it is expected to be run before multi-threaded applications have started multiple threads. However, this is not always the case. Some applications may need to reset and reload their running configuration, and some may use `SET_OPT_xxx()` macros during processing. If you need to dynamically change your option configuration in your multi-threaded application, it is your responsibility to

prevent all threads from accessing the option configuration state, except the one altering the configuration.

The various accessor macros (`HAVE_OPT()`, etc.) do not modify state and are safe to use in a multi-threaded application. It is safe as long as no other thread is concurrently modifying state, of course.

## 7.7 Option Descriptor File

This is the module that is to be compiled and linked with your program. It contains internal data and procedures subject to change. Basically, it contains a single global data structure containing all the information provided in the option definitions, plus a number of static strings and any callout procedures that are specified or required. You should never have need for looking at this, except, perhaps, to examine the code generated for implementing the `flag-code` construct.

## 7.8 Using AutoOpts

There are actually several levels of "using" autoopts. Which you choose depends upon how you plan to distribute (or not) your application.

### 7.8.1 local-only use

To use AutoOpts in your application where you do not have to worry about distribution issues, your issues are simple and few.

- Create a file '`myopts.def`', according to the documentation above. It is probably easiest to start with the example in Section 7.3 [Quick Start], page 76 and edit it into the form you need.
- Run AutoGen to create the option interface file (`myopts.h`) and the option descriptor code (`myopts.c`):

```
autogen myopts.def
```

- In all your source files where you need to refer to option state, `#include "myopts.h"`.
- In your main routine, code something along the lines of:

```
#define ARGC_MIN some-lower-limit
#define ARGC_MAX some-upper-limit
main( int argc, char** argv )
{
    {
        int arg_ct = optionProcess( &myprogOptions, argc, argv );
        argc -= arg_ct;
        if ((argc < ARGC_MIN) || (argc > ARGC_MAX)) {
            fprintf( stderr, "%s ERROR:  remaining args (%d) "
                     "out of range\n", myprogOptions.pzProgName,
                     argc );

            USAGE( EXIT_FAILURE );
        }
        argv += arg_ct;
```

```
        }
        if (HAVE_OPT(OPTN_NAME))
            respond_to_optn_name();
        ...
    }
```

- Compile ‘`myopts.c`’ and link your program with the following additional arguments:

  ‘`autoopts-config cflags ldflags`‘ `myopts.c`

### 7.8.2 binary distro, AutoOpts not installed

If you will be distributing (or copying) your project to a system that does not have AutoOpts installed, you will need to statically link the AutoOpts library, “libopts” into your program. Get the link information with “`static-libs`” instead of “`ldflags`”:

‘`autoopts-config static-libs`‘

### 7.8.3 binary distro, AutoOpts pre-installed

If you will be distributing (or copying) your project to a system that does have AutoOpts (or only “libopts”) installed, you will still need to ensure that the library is findable at program load time, or you will still have to statically link. The former can be accomplished by linking your project with `--rpath` or by setting the `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` appropriately. Otherwise, See Section 7.8.2 [binary not installed], page 121.

### 7.8.4 source distro, AutoOpts pre-installed

If you will be distributing your project to a system that will build your product but it may not be pre-installed with AutoOpts, you will need to do some configuration checking before you start the build. Assuming you are willing to fail the build if AutoOpts has not been installed, you will still need to do a little work.

AutoOpts is distributed with a configuration check M4 script, ‘`autoopts.m4`’. It will add an `autoconf` macro named, `AG_PATH_AUTOOPTS`. Add this to your ‘`configure.ac`’ script and use the following substitution values:

`AUTOGEN` the name of the autogen executable

`AUTOGEN_TPLIB`
: the directory where AutoGen template library is stored

`AUTOOPTS_CFLAGS`
: the compile time options needed to find the AutoOpts headers

`AUTOOPTS_LIBS`
: the link options required to access the `libopts` library

### 7.8.5 source distro, AutoOpts not installed

If you will be distributing your project to a system that will build your product but it may not be pre-installed with AutoOpts, you may wish to incorporate the sources for `libopts` in your project. To do this, I recommend reading the tear-off libopts library ‘`README`’ that you can find in the ‘`pkg/libopts`’ directory. You can also examine an example package (blocksort) that incorporates this tear off library in the autogen distribution directory. There is also a web page that describes what you need to do:

http://autogen.sourceforge.net/blocksort.html

Alternatively, you can pull the `libopts` library sources into a build directory and build it for installation along with your package. This can be done approximately as follows:

```
tar -xzvf `autoopts-config libsrc`
cd libopts-*
./bootstrap
configure
make
make install
```

That will install the library, but not the headers or anything else.

## 7.9 Configuring your program

AutoOpts supports the notion of "presetting" the value or state of an option. The values may be obtained either from environment variables or from configuration files ('`rc`' or '`ini`' files). In order to take advantage of this, the AutoOpts client program must specify these features in the option descriptor file (see Section 7.4.1 [program attributes], page 78) with the `rcfile` or `environrc` attributes.

It is also possible to configure your program *without* using the command line option parsing code. This is done by using only the following four functions from the '`libopts`' library:

'`configFileLoad`'
: (see Section 7.5.32.2 [libopts-configFileLoad], page 110) will parse the contents of a config file and return a pointer to a structure representing the hierarchical value. The values are sorted alphabetically by the value name and all entries with the same name will retain their original order. Insertion sort is used.

'`optionGetValue`'
: (see Section 7.5.32.7 [libopts-optionGetValue], page 112) will find the first value within the hierarchy with a name that matches the name passed in.

'`optionNextValue`'
: (see Section 7.5.32.9 [libopts-optionNextValue], page 113) will return the next value that follows the value passed in as an argument. If you wish to get all the values for a particular name, you must take note when the name changes.

'`optionUnloadNested`'
: (see Section 7.5.32.15 [libopts-optionUnloadNested], page 116). The pointer passed in must be of type, `OPARG_TYPE_HIERARCHY` (see the autoopts/options.h header file). `configFileLoad` will return a `tOptionValue` pointer of that type. This function will release all the associated memory. `AutoOpts` generated code uses this function for its own needs. Client code should only call this function with pointers gotten from `configFileLoad`.

### 7.9.1 configuration file presets

Configuration files are enabled by specifying the program attribute `homerc` (see Section 7.4.1 [program attributes], page 78). Any option not marked with the "no-preset" attribute may

appear in a configuration file. The files loaded are selected both by the `homerc` entries and, optionally, via a command line option. The first component of the `homerc` entry may be an environment variable such as `$HOME`, or it may also be `$$` (**two** dollar sign characters) to specify the directory of the executable. For example:

```
homerc = "$$/../share/autogen";
```

will cause the AutoOpts library to look in the normal autogen datadir relative to the current installation directory for autogen.

The configuration files are processed in the order they are specified by the `homerc` attribute, so that each new file will normally override the settings of the previous files. This may be overridden by marking some options for `immediate action` (see Section 7.4.5.9 [Immediate Action], page 91). Any such options are acted upon in **reverse** order. The disabled `load-opts` (`--no-load-opts`) option, for example, is an immediate action option. Its presence in the last `homerc` file will prevent the processing of any prior `homerc` files because its effect is immediate.

Configuration file processing can be completely suppressed by specifying `--no-load-opts` on the command line, or `PROGRAM_LOAD_OPTS=no` in the environment (if `environrc` has been specified).

See the "Configuration File Format" section (see Section 7.10 [Config File Format], page 130) for details on the format of the file.

### 7.9.2 Saving the presets into a configuration file

When configuration files are enabled for an application, the user is also provided with an automatically supplied `--save-opts` option. All of the known option state will be written to either the specified output file or, if it is not specified, then to the last specified `homerc` file.

### 7.9.3 Creating a sample configuration file

AutoOpts is shipped with a template named, '`rc-sample.tpl`'. If your option definition file specifies the `homerc` attribute, then you may invoke '`autogen`' thus:

```
autogen -Trc-sample <your-option-def-file>
```

This will, by default, produce a sample file named, '`sample-<prog-name>rc`'. It will be named differently if you specify your configuration (rc) file name with the `rcfile` attribute. In that case, the output file will be named, '`sample-<rcfile-name>`'. It will contain all of the program options not marked as `no-preset`. It will also include the text from the `doc` attribute.

Doing so with getdefs' option definitions yields this sample-getdefsrc file. I tend to be wordy in my `doc` attributes:

```
# getdefs sample configuration file
# getdefs copyright 1999-2007 Bruce Korb - all rights reserved
#
# getdefs is free software: you can redistribute it and/or modify it
# under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by the
# Free Software Foundation, either version 3 of the License, or
# (at your option) any later version.
#
```

```
# getdefs is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but
# WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of
# MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.
# See the GNU General Public License for more details.
#
# You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License along
# with this program.  If not, see <http://www.gnu.org/licenses/>.

# defs_to_get -- Regexp to look for after the "/*="
#
# If you want definitions only from a particular category, or even
# with names matching particular patterns, then specify this regular
# expression for the text that must follow the @code{/*=}.
# Example:
#
#defs_to_get reg-ex

# ordering -- Alphabetize or use named file
#
# By default, ordering is alphabetical by the entry name.  Use,
# @code{no-ordering} if order is unimportant.  Use @code{ordering}
# with no argument to order without case sensitivity.  Use
# @code{ordering=<file-name>} if chronological order is important.
# getdefs will maintain the text content of @code{file-name}.
# @code{file-name} need not exist.
# Example:
#
#ordering file-name

# first_index -- The first index to apply to groups
#
# This configuration value takes an integer number as its argument.
#
#
# By default, the first occurrence of a named definition will have an
# index of zero.  Sometimes, that needs to be a reserved value.  Provide
# this option to specify a different starting point.
# Example:
#
#first_index 0

# input -- Input file to search for defs
#
# All files that are to be searched for definitions must be named on
# the command line or read from @code{stdin}.  If there is only one
# @code{input} option and it is the string, "-", then the input file
# list is read from @code{stdin}.  If a command line argument is not
```

```
# an option name and does not contain an assignment operator
# (@code{=}), then it defaults to being an input file name.
# At least one input file must be specified.
# Example:
#
#input src-file

# subblock -- subblock definition names
#
# This option is used to create shorthand entries for nested definitions.
# For example, with:
# @table @r
# @item using subblock thus
# @code{--subblock=arg=argname,type,null}
# @item and defining an @code{arg} thus
# @code{arg: this, char *}
# @item will then expand to:
# @code{arg = @{ argname = this; type = "char *"; @};}
# @end table
# The "this, char *" string is separated at the commas, with the
# white space removed.  You may use characters other than commas by
# starting the value string with a punctuation character other than
# a single or double quote character.  You may also omit intermediate
# values by placing the commas next to each other with no intervening
# white space.  For example, "+mumble++yes+" will expand to:
# @*
# @code{arg = @{ argname = mumble; null = "yes"; @};}.
# Example:
#
#subblock sub-def

# listattr -- attribute with list of values
#
# This option is used to create shorthand entries for definitions
# that generally appear several times.  That is, they tend to be
# a list of values.  For example, with:
# @*
# @code{listattr=foo} defined, the text:
# @*
# @code{foo: this, is, a, multi-list} will then expand to:
# @*
# @code{foo = 'this', 'is', 'a', 'multi-list';}
# @*
# The texts are separated by the commas, with the
# white space removed.  You may use characters other than commas by
# starting the value string with a punctuation character other than
# a single or double quote character.
```

```
# Example:
#
#listattr def

# filelist -- Insert source file names into defs
#
# Inserts the name of each input file into the output definitions.
# If no argument is supplied, the format will be:
# @example
# infile = '%s';
# @end example
# If an argument is supplied, that string will be used for the entry
# name instead of @var{infile}.
# Example:
#
#filelist file

# assign -- Global assignments
#
# The argument to each copy of this option will be inserted into
# the output definitions, with only a semicolon attached.
# Example:
#
#assign ag-def

# common_assign -- Assignments common to all blocks
#
# The argument to each copy of this option will be inserted into
# each output definition, with only a semicolon attached.
# Example:
#
#common_assign ag-def

# copy -- File(s) to copy into definitions
#
# The content of each file named by these options will be inserted into
# the output definitions.
# Example:
#
#copy file

# srcfile -- Insert source file name into each def
#
# Inserts the name of the input file where a definition was found
# into the output definition.
# If no argument is supplied, the format will be:
# @example
```

```
# srcfile = '%s';
# @end example
# If an argument is supplied, that string will be used for the entry
# name instead of @var{srcfile}.
# Example:
#
#srcfile file

# linenum -- Insert source line number into each def
#
# Inserts the line number in the input file where a definition
# was found into the output definition.
# If no argument is supplied, the format will be:
# @example
# linenum = '%s';
# @end example
# If an argument is supplied, that string will be used for the entry
# name instead of @var{linenum}.
# Example:
#
#linenum def-name

# output -- Output file to open
#
# If you are not sending the output to an AutoGen process,
# you may name an output file instead.
# Example:
#
#output file

# autogen -- Invoke AutoGen with defs
#
# This is the default output mode.  Specifying @code{no-autogen} is
# equivalent to @code{output=-}.  If you supply an argument to this
# option, that program will be started as if it were AutoGen and
# its standard in will be set to the output definitions of this program.
# Example:
#
#autogen ag-cmd

# template -- Template Name
#
# Specifies the template name to be used for generating the final output.
# Example:
#
#template file
```

```
# agarg -- AutoGen Argument
#
# This is a pass-through argument.  It allows you to specify any
# arbitrary argument to be passed to AutoGen.
# Example:
#
#agarg ag-opt

# base_name -- Base name for output file(s)
#
# When output is going to AutoGen, a base name must either be supplied
# or derived.  If this option is not supplied, then it is taken from
# the @code{template} option.  If that is not provided either, then
# it is set to the base name of the current directory.
# Example:
#
#base_name name
```

### 7.9.4 environment variable presets

If the AutoOpts client program specifies `environrc` in its option descriptor file, then environment variables will be used for presetting option state. Variables will be looked for that are named, `PROGRAM_OPTNAME` and `PROGRAM`. `PROGRAM` is the upper cased `C-name` of the program, and `OPTNAME` is the upper cased `C-name` of a specific option. (The `C-name`s are the regular names with all special characters converted to underscores (`_`).)

Option specific environment variables are processed after (and thus take precedence over) the contents of the `PROGRAM` environment variable. The option argument string for these options takes on the string value gotten from the environment. Consequently, you can only have one instance of the `OPTNAME`.

If a particular option may be disabled, then its disabled state is indicated by setting the `PROGRAM_OPTNAME` value to the disablement prefix. So, for example, if the disablement prefix were `dont`, then you can disable the `optname` option by setting the `PROGRAM_OPTNAME`' environment variable to '*dont*'. See Section 7.4.5.2 [Common Attributes], page 88.

The `PROGRAM` environment string is tokenized and parsed much like a command line. Doubly quoted strings have backslash escapes processed the same way they are processed in C program constant strings. Singly quoted strings are "pretty raw" in that backslashes are honored before other backslashes, apostrophes, newlines and cr/newline pairs. The options must be introduced with hyphens in the same way as the command line.

Note that not all options may be preset. Options that are specified with the `no-preset` attribute and the `--help`, `--more-help`, and `--save-opts` auto-supported options may not be preset.

### 7.9.5 Config file only example

If for some reason it is difficult or unworkable to integrate configuration file processing with command line option parsing, the `libopts` (see Section 7.5.32 [libopts procedures], page 109) library can still be used to process configuration files. Below is a "`Hello, World!`" greeting

program that tries to load a configuration file ‘`hello.conf`’ to see if it should use an alternate greeting or to personalize the salutation.

```
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <stdio.h>
#include <pwd.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <unistd.h>
#include <autoopts/options.h>
int main(int argc, char ** argv) {
  char const * greeting = "Hello";
  char const * greeted  = "World";
  tOptionValue const * pOV = configFileLoad("hello.conf");

  if (pOV != NULL) {
    const tOptionValue* pGetV = optionGetValue(pOV, "greeting");

    if (  (pGetV != NULL)
       && (pGetV->valType == OPARG_TYPE_STRING))
      greeting = strdup(pGetV->v.strVal);

    pGetV = optionGetValue(pOV, "personalize");
    if (pGetV != NULL) {
      struct passwd * pwe = getpwuid(getuid());
      if (pwe != NULL)
        greeted = strdup(pwe->pw_gecos);
    }

    optionUnloadNested(pOV); /* deallocate config data */
  }
  printf("%s, %s!\n", greeting, greeted);
  return 0;
}
```

With that text in a file named “hello.c”, this short script:

```
cc -o hello hello.c ‘autoopts-config cflags ldflags‘
./hello
echo ’greeting Buzz off’ > hello.conf
./hello
echo personalize > hello.conf
./hello
```

will produce the following output (for me):

```
Hello, World!
Buzz off, World!
Hello, Bruce Korb!
```

## 7.10 Configuration File Format

The configuration file is designed to associate names and values, much like an AutoGen Definition File (see Chapter 2 [Definitions File], page 6). Unfortunately, the file formats are different. Specifically, AutoGen Definitions provide for simpler methods for the precise control of a value string and provides for dynamically computed content. Configuration files have some established traditions in their layout. So, they are different, even though they do both allow for a single name to be associated with multiple values and they both allow for hierarchical values.

### 7.10.1 assigning a string value to a configurable

The basic syntax is a name followed by a value on a single line. They are separated from each other by either white space, a colon (`:`) or an equal sign (`=`). The colon or equal sign may optionally be surrounded by additional white space. If more than one value line is needed, a backslash (\) may be used to continue the value. The backslash (but not the newline) will be erased. Leading and trailing white space is always stripped from the value.

Fundamentally, it looks like this:

```
name  value for that name
name = another \
     multi-line value \
     for that name.
name: a *third* value for ``name''
```

If you need more control over the content of the value, you may enclose the value in XML style brackets:

```
<name>value </name>
```

Within these brackets you need not (must not) continue the value data with backslashes. You may also select the string formation rules to use, just add the attribute after the name, thus: `<name keep>`.

'`keep`' This mode will keep all text between the brackets and not strip any white space.

'`uncooked`'
This mode strips leading and trailing white space, but not do any quote processing. This is the default and need not be specified.

'`cooked`' Strings are formed and concatenated if, after stripping leading and trailing white space, the text begins and ends with either single (') or double (") quote characters. That processing is identical to the string formation used in AutoGen definition files (see Section 3.3.2 [basic expression], page 24), except that backquotes are treated like ordinary characters.

And here is an example of an XML-styled value:

```
<name cooked>
    "This is\n\tanother multi-line\n"
    "\tstring example."
</name>
```

The string value associated with "name" will be exactly the text enclosed in quotes with the escaped characters "cooked" as you would expect (three text lines with the last line not ending with a newline, but ending with a period).

### 7.10.2 integer values

A name can be specified as having an integer value. To do this, you must use the XML-ish format and specify a "type" attribute for the name:

```
<name type=integer> 1234 </name>
```

Boolean, enumeration and set membership types will be added as time allows. "type=string" is also supported, but also is the default.

### 7.10.3 hierarchical values

In order to specify a hierarchical value, you *must* use XML-styled formatting, specifying a type that is shorter and easier to spell:

```
<structured-name type=nested>
    [[....]]
</structured-name>
```

The ellipsis may be filled with any legal configuration file name/value assignments.

### 7.10.4 configuration file sections

Configuration files may be sectioned. If, for example, you have a collection of programs that work closely together and, likely, have a common set of options, these programs may use a single, sectioned, configuration file. The file may be sectioned in either of two ways. The two ways may not be intermixed in a single configuration file. All text before the first segmentation line is processed, then only the segment that applies:

'`[PROG_NAME]`'
: The file is partitioned by lines that contains an square open bracket (`[`), the **upper-cased** c-variable-syntax program name and a square close bracket (`]`). For example, if the `prog-name` program had a sectioned configuration file, then a line containing exactly '`[PROG_NAME]`' would be processed.

'`<?program prog-name>`'
: The `<?` marker indicates an XML directive. The `program` directive is interpreted by the configuration file processor to segment the file in the same way as the '`[PROG_NAME]`' sectioning is done. Any other XML directives are treated as comments.

Segmentation does not apply if the config file is being parsed with the `configFileLoad(3AutoOpts)` function.

### 7.10.5 comments in the configuration file

Comments are lines beginning with a hash mark (`#`), XML-style comments (`<!-- arbitrary text -->`), and unrecognized XML directives.

```
# this is a comment
<!-- this is also
     a comment -->
<?this is
  a bad comment ;->
```

## 7.11 AutoOpts for Shell Scripts

AutoOpts may be used with shell scripts either by automatically creating a complete program that will process command line options and pass back the results to the invoking shell by issuing shell variable assignment commands, or it may be used to generate portable shell code that can be inserted into your script.

The functionality of these features, of course, is somewhat constrained compared with the normal program facilities. Specifically, you cannot invoke callout procedures with either of these methods. Additionally, if you generate a shell script to do the parsing:

1. You cannot obtain options from configuration files.
2. You cannot obtain options from environment variables.
3. You cannot save the option state to an option file.
4. Option conflict/requirement verification is disabled.

Both of these methods are enabled by running AutoGen on the definitions file with the additional global attribute:

```
test-main [ = proc-to-call ] ;
```

If you do not supply a `proc-to-call`, it will default to `optionPutShell`. That will produce a program that will process the options and generate shell text for the invoking shell to interpret (see Section 7.11.1 [binary-parser], page 132). If you supply the name, `optionParseShell`, then you will have a program that will generate a shell script that can parse the options (see Section 7.11.2 [script-parser], page 133). If you supply a different procedure name, you will have to provide that routine and it may do whatever you like.

### 7.11.1 Parsing with an Executable

The following commands are approximately all that is needed to build a shell script command line option parser from an option definition file:

```
autogen -L <opt-template-dir> test-errors.def
cc -o test-errors -L <opt-lib-dir> -I <opt-include-dir> \
        -DTEST_PROGRAM_OPTS test-errors.c -lopts
```

The resulting program can then be used within your shell script as follows:

```
eval `./test-errors "$@"`
if [ -z "${OPTION_CT}" ] ; then exit 1 ; fi
test ${OPTION_CT} -gt 0 && shift ${OPTION_CT}
```

Here is the usage output example from AutoOpts error handling tests. The option definition has argument reordering enabled:

```
test_errors - Test AutoOpts for errors
USAGE:  errors [ -<flag> [<val>] | --<name>[{=| }<val>] ]... arg ...
  Flg Arg Option-Name    Description
   -o no  option         The option option descrip
   -s Str second         The second option descrip
                                 - may appear up to 10 times
   -X no  another        Another option descrip
                                 - may appear up to 5 times
   -? no  help           Display usage information and exit
```

```
   -! no  more-help      Extended usage information passed thru pager
   -> opt save-opts      Save the option state to a config file
   -< Str load-opts      Load options from a config file
                                - disabled as --no-load-opts
                                - may appear multiple times

Options are specified by doubled hyphens and their name
or by a single hyphen and the flag character.
Operands and options may be intermixed.  They will be reordered.

The following option preset mechanisms are supported:
 - reading file errorsRC
```

Using the invocation,

```
  test-errors operand1 -s first operand2 -X -- -s operand3
```

you get the following output for your shell script to evaluate:

```
OPTION_CT=4
export OPTION_CT
TEST_ERRORS_SECOND='first'
export TEST_ERRORS_SECOND
TEST_ERRORS_ANOTHER=1 # 0x1
export TEST_ERRORS_ANOTHER
set -- 'operand1' 'operand2' '-s' 'operand3'
OPTION_CT=0
```

### 7.11.2 Parsing with a Portable Script

If you had used `test-main = optionParseShell` instead, then you can, at this point, merely run the program and it will write the parsing script to standard out. You may also provide this program with command line options to specify the shell script file to create or edit, and you may specify the shell program to use on the first shell script line. That program's usage text would look something like the following and the script parser itself would be very verbose:

```
genshellopt - Generate Shell Option Processing Script - Ver. 1
USAGE:  genshellopt [ -<flag> [<val>] | --<name>[{=| }<val>] ]...
  Flg Arg Option-Name    Description
   -o Str script         Output Script File
   -s Str shell          Shell name (follows "#!" magic)
                                - disabled as --no-shell
                                - enabled by default
   -v opt version        Output version information and exit
   -? no  help           Display usage information and exit
   -! no  more-help      Extended usage information passed thru pager

Options are specified by doubled hyphens and their name
or by a single hyphen and the flag character.

Note that 'shell' is only useful if the output file does not already
```

```
exist.  If it does, then the shell name and optional first argument
will be extracted from the script file.

If the script file already exists and contains Automated Option Processing
text, the second line of the file through the ending tag will be replaced
by the newly generated text.  The first ‘#!’ line will be regenerated.

please send bug reports to:  autogen-users@lists.sourceforge.net

= = = = = = = =

This incarnation of genshell will produce
a shell script to parse the options for getdefs:

getdefs (GNU AutoGen) - AutoGen Definition Extraction Tool - Ver. 1.4
USAGE:  getdefs [ <option-name>[{=| }<val>] ]...
   Arg Option-Name    Description
   Str defs-to-get    Regexp to look for after the "/*="
   opt ordering       Alphabetize or use named file
   Num first-index    The first index to apply to groups
   Str input          Input file to search for defs
   Str subblock       subblock definition names
   Str listattr       attribute with list of values
   opt filelist       Insert source file names into defs
   Str assign         Global assignments
   Str common-assign  Assignments common to all blocks
   Str copy           File(s) to copy into definitions
   opt srcfile        Insert source file name into each def
   opt linenum        Insert source line number into each def
   Str output         Output file to open
   opt autogen        Invoke AutoGen with defs
   Str template       Template Name
   Str agarg          AutoGen Argument
   Str base-name      Base name for output file(s)
   opt version        Output version information and exit
   no  help           Display usage information and exit
   no  more-help      Extended usage information passed thru pager
   opt save-opts      Save the option state to a config file
   Str load-opts      Load options from a config file

All arguments are named options.

If no ‘‘input’’ argument is provided or is set to simply "-", and if
‘‘stdin’’ is not a ‘‘tty’’, then the list of input files will be
read from ‘‘stdin’’.

please send bug reports to:  autogen-users@lists.sourceforge.net
```

Resulting in the following script:

```
#! /bin/sh
# # # # # # # # # # -- do not modify this marker --
#
#  DO NOT EDIT THIS SECTION OF /local/tmp/.ag-OFuvmB/genshellopt.sh
#
#  From here to the next '-- do not modify this marker --',
#  the text has been generated Saturday May 24, 2008 at 10:46:29 AM PDT
#  From the GETDEFS option definitions
#
GETDEFS_LONGUSAGE_TEXT='getdefs (GNU AutoGen) - AutoGen Definition Extraction Tool -
USAGE:  getdefs [ <option-name>[{=| }<val>] ]...
   Arg Option-Name    Description
   Str defs-to-get    Regexp to look for after the "/*="
   opt ordering       Alphabetize or use named file
                                - disabled as --no-ordering
                                - enabled by default
   Num first-index    The first index to apply to groups
   Str input          Input file to search for defs
                                - may appear multiple times
                                - default option for unnamed options
   Str subblock       subblock definition names
                                - may appear multiple times
   Str listattr       attribute with list of values
                                - may appear multiple times
   opt filelist       Insert source file names into defs

Definition insertion options

   Arg Option-Name    Description
   Str assign         Global assignments
                                - may appear multiple times
   Str common-assign  Assignments common to all blocks
                                - may appear multiple times
   Str copy           File(s) to copy into definitions
                                - may appear multiple times
   opt srcfile        Insert source file name into each def
   opt linenum        Insert source line number into each def

Definition output disposition options:

   Arg Option-Name    Description
   Str output         Output file to open
                                - an alternate for autogen
   opt autogen        Invoke AutoGen with defs
                                - disabled as --no-autogen
```

```
                                - enabled by default
   Str template       Template Name
   Str agarg          AutoGen Argument
                                - prohibits these options:
                                output
                                - may appear multiple times
   Str base-name      Base name for output file(s)
                                - prohibits these options:
                                output

version and help options:

   Arg Option-Name    Description
   opt version        Output version information and exit
   no  help           Display usage information and exit
   no  more-help      Extended usage information passed thru pager
   opt save-opts      Save the option state to a config file
   Str load-opts      Load options from a config file
                                - disabled as --no-load-opts
                                - may appear multiple times

All arguments are named options.

If no ``input'\'''\'' argument is provided or is set to simply "-", and if
``stdin'\'''\'' is not a ``tty'\'''\'', then the list of input files will be
read from ``stdin'\'''\''.

The following option preset mechanisms are supported:
 - reading file /dev/null

This program extracts AutoGen definitions from a list of source files.
Definitions are delimited by `/*=<entry-type> <entry-name>\n'\'' and
`=*/\n'\''.  From that, this program creates a definition of the
following form:

    #line nnn "source-file-name"
    entry_type = {
        name = entry_name;
        ...
    };

The ellipsis '\''...'\'' is filled in by text found between the two
delimiters, with everything up through the first sequence of
asterisks deleted on every line.

There are two special ``entry types'\'''\'':
```

```
*  The entry_type enclosure and the name entry will be omitted
   and the ellipsis will become top-level definitions.

-- The contents of the comment must be a single getdefs option.
   The option name must follow the double hyphen and its argument
   will be everything following the name.  This is intended for use
   with the ‘‘subblock’\’’’\’’ and ‘‘listattr’\’’’\’’ options.

please send bug reports to:  autogen-users@lists.sourceforge.net’

GETDEFS_USAGE_TEXT=’getdefs (GNU AutoGen) - AutoGen Definition Extraction Tool - Ver
USAGE:  getdefs [ <option-name>[{=| }<val>] ]...
   Arg Option-Name    Description
   Str defs-to-get    Regexp to look for after the "/*="
   opt ordering       Alphabetize or use named file
   Num first-index    The first index to apply to groups
   Str input          Input file to search for defs
   Str subblock       subblock definition names
   Str listattr       attribute with list of values
   opt filelist       Insert source file names into defs
   Str assign         Global assignments
   Str common-assign  Assignments common to all blocks
   Str copy           File(s) to copy into definitions
   opt srcfile        Insert source file name into each def
   opt linenum        Insert source line number into each def
   Str output         Output file to open
   opt autogen        Invoke AutoGen with defs
   Str template       Template Name
   Str agarg          AutoGen Argument
   Str base-name      Base name for output file(s)
   opt version        Output version information and exit
   no  help           Display usage information and exit
   no  more-help      Extended usage information passed thru pager
   opt save-opts      Save the option state to a config file
   Str load-opts      Load options from a config file

All arguments are named options.

If no ‘‘input’\’’’\’’ argument is provided or is set to simply "-", and if
‘‘stdin’\’’’\’’ is not a ‘‘tty’\’’’\’’, then the list of input files will be
read from ‘‘stdin’\’’’\’’.

please send bug reports to:  autogen-users@lists.sourceforge.net’


GETDEFS_DEFS_TO_GET="${GETDEFS_DEFS_TO_GET}"
GETDEFS_DEFS_TO_GET_set=false
```

```
export GETDEFS_DEFS_TO_GET

GETDEFS_ORDERING="${GETDEFS_ORDERING}"
GETDEFS_ORDERING_set=false
export GETDEFS_ORDERING

GETDEFS_FIRST_INDEX="${GETDEFS_FIRST_INDEX-'0'}"
GETDEFS_FIRST_INDEX_set=false
export GETDEFS_FIRST_INDEX

if test -z "${GETDEFS_INPUT}"
then
  GETDEFS_INPUT_CT=0
else
  GETDEFS_INPUT_CT=1
  GETDEFS_INPUT_1="${GETDEFS_INPUT}"
fi
export GETDEFS_INPUT_CT
if test -z "${GETDEFS_SUBBLOCK}"
then
  GETDEFS_SUBBLOCK_CT=0
else
  GETDEFS_SUBBLOCK_CT=1
  GETDEFS_SUBBLOCK_1="${GETDEFS_SUBBLOCK}"
fi
export GETDEFS_SUBBLOCK_CT
if test -z "${GETDEFS_LISTATTR}"
then
  GETDEFS_LISTATTR_CT=0
else
  GETDEFS_LISTATTR_CT=1
  GETDEFS_LISTATTR_1="${GETDEFS_LISTATTR}"
fi
export GETDEFS_LISTATTR_CT
GETDEFS_FILELIST="${GETDEFS_FILELIST}"
GETDEFS_FILELIST_set=false
export GETDEFS_FILELIST

if test -z "${GETDEFS_ASSIGN}"
then
  GETDEFS_ASSIGN_CT=0
else
  GETDEFS_ASSIGN_CT=1
  GETDEFS_ASSIGN_1="${GETDEFS_ASSIGN}"
fi
export GETDEFS_ASSIGN_CT
if test -z "${GETDEFS_COMMON_ASSIGN}"
```

```
then
  GETDEFS_COMMON_ASSIGN_CT=0
else
  GETDEFS_COMMON_ASSIGN_CT=1
  GETDEFS_COMMON_ASSIGN_1="${GETDEFS_COMMON_ASSIGN}"
fi
export GETDEFS_COMMON_ASSIGN_CT
if test -z "${GETDEFS_COPY}"
then
  GETDEFS_COPY_CT=0
else
  GETDEFS_COPY_CT=1
  GETDEFS_COPY_1="${GETDEFS_COPY}"
fi
export GETDEFS_COPY_CT
GETDEFS_SRCFILE="${GETDEFS_SRCFILE}"
GETDEFS_SRCFILE_set=false
export GETDEFS_SRCFILE

GETDEFS_LINENUM="${GETDEFS_LINENUM}"
GETDEFS_LINENUM_set=false
export GETDEFS_LINENUM

GETDEFS_OUTPUT="${GETDEFS_OUTPUT}"
GETDEFS_OUTPUT_set=false
export GETDEFS_OUTPUT

GETDEFS_AUTOGEN="${GETDEFS_AUTOGEN}"
GETDEFS_AUTOGEN_set=false
export GETDEFS_AUTOGEN

GETDEFS_TEMPLATE="${GETDEFS_TEMPLATE}"
GETDEFS_TEMPLATE_set=false
export GETDEFS_TEMPLATE

if test -z "${GETDEFS_AGARG}"
then
  GETDEFS_AGARG_CT=0
else
  GETDEFS_AGARG_CT=1
  GETDEFS_AGARG_1="${GETDEFS_AGARG}"
fi
export GETDEFS_AGARG_CT
GETDEFS_BASE_NAME="${GETDEFS_BASE_NAME}"
GETDEFS_BASE_NAME_set=false
export GETDEFS_BASE_NAME
```

```
OPT_ARG="$1"

while [ $# -gt 0 ]
do
    OPT_ELEMENT=''
    OPT_ARG_VAL=''

    OPT_ARG="${1}"
        OPT_CODE=`echo "X${OPT_ARG}"|sed 's/^X-*//'`
        shift
        OPT_ARG="$1"

        case "${OPT_CODE}" in *=* )
            OPT_ARG_VAL=`echo "${OPT_CODE}"|sed 's/^[^=]*=//'`
            OPT_CODE=`echo "${OPT_CODE}"|sed 's/=.*$//'` ;; esac

        case "${OPT_CODE}" in
        'de' | \
        'def' | \
        'defs' | \
        'defs-' | \
        'defs-t' | \
        'defs-to' | \
        'defs-to-' | \
        'defs-to-g' | \
        'defs-to-ge' | \
        'defs-to-get' )
            if [ -n "${GETDEFS_DEFS_TO_GET}" ] && ${GETDEFS_DEFS_TO_GET_set} ; then
                echo Error:  duplicate DEFS_TO_GET option >&2
                echo "$GETDEFS_USAGE_TEXT"
                exit 1 ; fi
            GETDEFS_DEFS_TO_GET_set=true
            OPT_NAME='DEFS_TO_GET'
            OPT_ARG_NEEDED=YES
            ;;

        'or' | \
        'ord' | \
        'orde' | \
        'order' | \
        'orderi' | \
        'orderin' | \
        'ordering' )
            if [ -n "${GETDEFS_ORDERING}" ] && ${GETDEFS_ORDERING_set} ; then
                echo Error:  duplicate ORDERING option >&2
                echo "$GETDEFS_USAGE_TEXT"
                exit 1 ; fi
```

```
        GETDEFS_ORDERING_set=true
        OPT_NAME='ORDERING'
        eval GETDEFS_ORDERING${OPT_ELEMENT}=true
        export GETDEFS_ORDERING${OPT_ELEMENT}
        OPT_ARG_NEEDED=OK
        ;;

    'no-o' | \
    'no-or' | \
    'no-ord' | \
    'no-orde' | \
    'no-order' | \
    'no-orderi' | \
    'no-orderin' | \
    'no-ordering' )
        if [ -n "${GETDEFS_ORDERING}" ] && ${GETDEFS_ORDERING_set} ; then
            echo Error:  duplicate ORDERING option >&2
            echo "$GETDEFS_USAGE_TEXT"
            exit 1 ; fi
        GETDEFS_ORDERING_set=true
        GETDEFS_ORDERING='no'
        export GETDEFS_ORDERING
        OPT_NAME='ORDERING'
        OPT_ARG_NEEDED=NO
        ;;

    'fir' | \
    'firs' | \
    'first' | \
    'first-' | \
    'first-i' | \
    'first-in' | \
    'first-ind' | \
    'first-inde' | \
    'first-index' )
        if [ -n "${GETDEFS_FIRST_INDEX}" ] && ${GETDEFS_FIRST_INDEX_set} ; then
            echo Error:  duplicate FIRST_INDEX option >&2
            echo "$GETDEFS_USAGE_TEXT"
            exit 1 ; fi
        GETDEFS_FIRST_INDEX_set=true
        OPT_NAME='FIRST_INDEX'
        OPT_ARG_NEEDED=YES
        ;;

    'in' | \
    'inp' | \
    'inpu' | \
```

```
'input' )
    GETDEFS_INPUT_CT=`expr ${GETDEFS_INPUT_CT} + 1`
    OPT_ELEMENT="_${GETDEFS_INPUT_CT}"
    OPT_NAME='INPUT'
    OPT_ARG_NEEDED=YES
    ;;

'su' | \
'sub' | \
'subb' | \
'subbl' | \
'subblo' | \
'subbloc' | \
'subblock' )
    GETDEFS_SUBBLOCK_CT=`expr ${GETDEFS_SUBBLOCK_CT} + 1`
    OPT_ELEMENT="_${GETDEFS_SUBBLOCK_CT}"
    OPT_NAME='SUBBLOCK'
    OPT_ARG_NEEDED=YES
    ;;

'lis' | \
'list' | \
'lista' | \
'listat' | \
'listatt' | \
'listattr' )
    GETDEFS_LISTATTR_CT=`expr ${GETDEFS_LISTATTR_CT} + 1`
    OPT_ELEMENT="_${GETDEFS_LISTATTR_CT}"
    OPT_NAME='LISTATTR'
    OPT_ARG_NEEDED=YES
    ;;

'fil' | \
'file' | \
'filel' | \
'fileli' | \
'filelis' | \
'filelist' )
    if [ -n "${GETDEFS_FILELIST}" ] && ${GETDEFS_FILELIST_set} ; then
        echo Error:  duplicate FILELIST option >&2
        echo "$GETDEFS_USAGE_TEXT"
        exit 1 ; fi
    GETDEFS_FILELIST_set=true
    OPT_NAME='FILELIST'
    eval GETDEFS_FILELIST${OPT_ELEMENT}=true
    export GETDEFS_FILELIST${OPT_ELEMENT}
    OPT_ARG_NEEDED=OK
```

```
        ;;

    'as' | \
    'ass' | \
    'assi' | \
    'assig' | \
    'assign' )
        GETDEFS_ASSIGN_CT=`expr ${GETDEFS_ASSIGN_CT} + 1`
        OPT_ELEMENT="_${GETDEFS_ASSIGN_CT}"
        OPT_NAME='ASSIGN'
        OPT_ARG_NEEDED=YES
        ;;

    'com' | \
    'comm' | \
    'commo' | \
    'common' | \
    'common-' | \
    'common-a' | \
    'common-as' | \
    'common-ass' | \
    'common-assi' | \
    'common-assig' | \
    'common-assign' )
        GETDEFS_COMMON_ASSIGN_CT=`expr ${GETDEFS_COMMON_ASSIGN_CT} + 1`
        OPT_ELEMENT="_${GETDEFS_COMMON_ASSIGN_CT}"
        OPT_NAME='COMMON_ASSIGN'
        OPT_ARG_NEEDED=YES
        ;;

    'cop' | \
    'copy' )
        GETDEFS_COPY_CT=`expr ${GETDEFS_COPY_CT} + 1`
        OPT_ELEMENT="_${GETDEFS_COPY_CT}"
        OPT_NAME='COPY'
        OPT_ARG_NEEDED=YES
        ;;

    'sr' | \
    'src' | \
    'srcf' | \
    'srcfi' | \
    'srcfil' | \
    'srcfile' )
        if [ -n "${GETDEFS_SRCFILE}" ] && ${GETDEFS_SRCFILE_set} ; then
            echo Error:  duplicate SRCFILE option >&2
            echo "$GETDEFS_USAGE_TEXT"
```

```
            exit 1 ; fi
        GETDEFS_SRCFILE_set=true
        OPT_NAME='SRCFILE'
        eval GETDEFS_SRCFILE${OPT_ELEMENT}=true
        export GETDEFS_SRCFILE${OPT_ELEMENT}
        OPT_ARG_NEEDED=OK
        ;;

    'lin' | \
    'line' | \
    'linen' | \
    'linenu' | \
    'linenum' )
        if [ -n "${GETDEFS_LINENUM}" ] && ${GETDEFS_LINENUM_set} ; then
            echo Error:  duplicate LINENUM option >&2
            echo "$GETDEFS_USAGE_TEXT"
            exit 1 ; fi
        GETDEFS_LINENUM_set=true
        OPT_NAME='LINENUM'
        eval GETDEFS_LINENUM${OPT_ELEMENT}=true
        export GETDEFS_LINENUM${OPT_ELEMENT}
        OPT_ARG_NEEDED=OK
        ;;

    'ou' | \
    'out' | \
    'outp' | \
    'outpu' | \
    'output' )
        if [ -n "${GETDEFS_OUTPUT}" ] && ${GETDEFS_OUTPUT_set} ; then
            echo Error:  duplicate OUTPUT option >&2
            echo "$GETDEFS_USAGE_TEXT"
            exit 1 ; fi
        GETDEFS_OUTPUT_set=true
        OPT_NAME='OUTPUT'
        OPT_ARG_NEEDED=YES
        ;;

    'au' | \
    'aut' | \
    'auto' | \
    'autog' | \
    'autoge' | \
    'autogen' )
        if [ -n "${GETDEFS_AUTOGEN}" ] && ${GETDEFS_AUTOGEN_set} ; then
            echo Error:  duplicate AUTOGEN option >&2
            echo "$GETDEFS_USAGE_TEXT"
```

```
            exit 1 ; fi
        GETDEFS_AUTOGEN_set=true
        OPT_NAME='AUTOGEN'
        eval GETDEFS_AUTOGEN${OPT_ELEMENT}=true
        export GETDEFS_AUTOGEN${OPT_ELEMENT}
        OPT_ARG_NEEDED=OK
        ;;

    'no-a' | \
    'no-au' | \
    'no-aut' | \
    'no-auto' | \
    'no-autog' | \
    'no-autoge' | \
    'no-autogen' )
        if [ -n "${GETDEFS_AUTOGEN}" ] && ${GETDEFS_AUTOGEN_set} ; then
            echo Error:  duplicate AUTOGEN option >&2
            echo "$GETDEFS_USAGE_TEXT"
            exit 1 ; fi
        GETDEFS_AUTOGEN_set=true
        GETDEFS_AUTOGEN='no'
        export GETDEFS_AUTOGEN
        OPT_NAME='AUTOGEN'
        OPT_ARG_NEEDED=NO
        ;;

    'te' | \
    'tem' | \
    'temp' | \
    'templ' | \
    'templa' | \
    'templat' | \
    'template' )
        if [ -n "${GETDEFS_TEMPLATE}" ] && ${GETDEFS_TEMPLATE_set} ; then
            echo Error:  duplicate TEMPLATE option >&2
            echo "$GETDEFS_USAGE_TEXT"
            exit 1 ; fi
        GETDEFS_TEMPLATE_set=true
        OPT_NAME='TEMPLATE'
        OPT_ARG_NEEDED=YES
        ;;

    'ag' | \
    'aga' | \
    'agar' | \
    'agarg' )
        GETDEFS_AGARG_CT=`expr ${GETDEFS_AGARG_CT} + 1`
```

```
        OPT_ELEMENT="_${GETDEFS_AGARG_CT}"
        OPT_NAME='AGARG'
        OPT_ARG_NEEDED=YES
        ;;

    'ba' | \
    'bas' | \
    'base' | \
    'base-' | \
    'base-n' | \
    'base-na' | \
    'base-nam' | \
    'base-name' )
        if [ -n "${GETDEFS_BASE_NAME}" ] && ${GETDEFS_BASE_NAME_set} ; then
            echo Error:  duplicate BASE_NAME option >&2
            echo "$GETDEFS_USAGE_TEXT"
            exit 1 ; fi
        GETDEFS_BASE_NAME_set=true
        OPT_NAME='BASE_NAME'
        OPT_ARG_NEEDED=YES
        ;;

    've' | \
    'ver' | \
    'vers' | \
    'versi' | \
    'versio' | \
    'version' )
        echo "$GETDEFS_LONGUSAGE_TEXT"
        exit 0
        ;;

    'he' | \
    'hel' | \
    'help' )
        echo "$GETDEFS_LONGUSAGE_TEXT"
        exit 0
        ;;

    'mo' | \
    'mor' | \
    'more' | \
    'more-' | \
    'more-h' | \
    'more-he' | \
    'more-hel' | \
    'more-help' )
```

```
        echo "$GETDEFS_LONGUSAGE_TEXT" | ${PAGER-more}
        exit 0
        ;;

    'sa' | \
    'sav' | \
    'save' | \
    'save-' | \
    'save-o' | \
    'save-op' | \
    'save-opt' | \
    'save-opts' )
        echo 'Warning:  Cannot save options files' >&2
        OPT_ARG_NEEDED=OK
        ;;

    'lo' | \
    'loa' | \
    'load' | \
    'load-' | \
    'load-o' | \
    'load-op' | \
    'load-opt' | \
    'load-opts' )
        echo 'Warning:  Cannot load options files' >&2
        OPT_ARG_NEEDED=YES
        ;;

    'no-l' | \
    'no-lo' | \
    'no-loa' | \
    'no-load' | \
    'no-load-' | \
    'no-load-o' | \
    'no-load-op' | \
    'no-load-opt' | \
    'no-load-opts' )
        echo 'Warning:  Cannot suppress the loading of options files' >&2
        OPT_ARG_NEEDED=NO
        ;;

    * )
        echo Unknown option: "${OPT_CODE}" >&2
        echo "$GETDEFS_USAGE_TEXT"
        exit 1
        ;;
    esac
```

```
            case "${OPT_ARG_NEEDED}" in
            NO )
                OPT_ARG_VAL=''
                ;;

            YES )
                if [ -z "${OPT_ARG_VAL}" ]
                then
                    if [ $# -eq 0 ]
                    then
                        echo No argument provided for ${OPT_NAME} option >&2
                        echo "$GETDEFS_USAGE_TEXT"
                        exit 1
                    fi

                    OPT_ARG_VAL="${OPT_ARG}"
                    shift
                    OPT_ARG="$1"
                fi
                ;;

            OK )
                if [ -z "${OPT_ARG_VAL}" ] && [ $# -gt 0 ]
                then
                    case "${OPT_ARG}" in -* ) ;; * )
                        OPT_ARG_VAL="${OPT_ARG}"
                        shift
                        OPT_ARG="$1" ;; esac
                fi
                ;;
            esac
        if [ -n "${OPT_ARG_VAL}" ]
        then
            eval GETDEFS_${OPT_NAME}${OPT_ELEMENT}="'${OPT_ARG_VAL}'"
            export GETDEFS_${OPT_NAME}${OPT_ELEMENT}
        fi
    done

    unset OPT_PROCESS || :
    unset OPT_ELEMENT || :
    unset OPT_ARG || :
    unset OPT_ARG_NEEDED || :
    unset OPT_NAME || :
    unset OPT_CODE || :
    unset OPT_ARG_VAL || :
```

```
# # # # # # # # # #
#
#  END OF AUTOMATED OPTION PROCESSING
#
# # # # # # # # # # -- do not modify this marker --

env | grep '^GETDEFS_'
```

## 7.12 Automated Info Docs

AutoOpts provides two templates for producing '`.texi`' documentation. '`aginfo.tpl`' for the invoking section, and '`aginfo3.tpl`' for describing exported library functions and macros.

For both types of documents, the documentation level is selected by passing a '`-DLEVEL=<level-name>`' argument to AutoGen when you build the document. (See the example invocation below.)

Two files will be produced, a '`.texi`' file and a '`.menu`' file. You should include the '`.menu`' file in your document where you wish to reference the '`invoking`' chapter, section or subsection.

The '`.texi`' file will contain an introductory paragraph, a menu and a subordinate section for the invocation usage and for each documented option. The introductory paragraph is normally the boiler plate text, along the lines of:

```
This chapter documents the @file{AutoOpts} generated usage text
and option meanings for the @file{your-program} program.
```

or:

```
These are the publicly exported procedures from the libname library.
Any other functions mentioned in the header file are for the private use
of the library.
```

### 7.12.1 "invoking" info docs

Using the option definitions for an AutoOpt client program, the '`aginfo.tpl`' template will produce texinfo text that documents the invocation of your program. The text emitted is designed to be included in the full texinfo document for your product. It is not a stand-alone document. The usage text for the Section 5.1 [autogen usage], page 61, Section 8.5.1 [getdefs usage], page 160 and Section 8.4.1 [columns usage], page 155 programs, are included in this document and are all generated using this template.

If your program's option definitions include a '`prog-info-descrip`' section, then that text will replace the boilerplate introductory paragraph.

These files are produced by invoking the following command:

```
autogen -L ${prefix}/share/autogen -T aginfo.tpl \
        -DLEVEL=section your-opts.def
```

Where '`${prefix}`' is the AutoGen installation prefix and '`your-opts.def`' is the name of your product's option definition file.

### 7.12.2 library info docs

The ‘texinfo’ doc for libraries is derived from mostly the same information as is used for producing man pages See Section 7.13.2 [man3], page 151. The main difference is that there is only one output file and the individual functions are referenced from a .texi menu. There is also a small difference in the global attributes used:

| | |
|---|---|
| lib_description | A description of the library. This text appears before the menu. If not provided, the standard boilerplate version will be inserted. |
| see_also | The SEE ALSO functionality is not supported for the ‘texinfo’ documentation, so any see_also attribute will be ignored. |

These files are produced by invoking the following commands:

```
getdefs linenum srcfile template=aginfo3.tpl output=libexport.def \
       <source-file-list>

autogen -L ${prefix}/share/autogen -DLEVEL=section libexport.def
```

Where ‘${prefix}’ is the AutoGen installation prefix and ‘libexport.def’ is some name that suits you.

An example of this can be seen in this document, See Section 7.5.32 [libopts procedures], page 109.

## 7.13 Automated Man Pages

AutoOpts provides two templates for producing man pages. The command (‘man1’) pages are derived from the options definition file, and the library (‘man3’) pages are derived from stylized comments (see Section 8.5 [getdefs Invocation], page 159).

### 7.13.1 command line man pages

Using the option definitions for an AutoOpts client program, the ‘agman1.tpl’ template will produce an nroff document suitable for use as a ‘man(1)’ page document for a command line command. The description section of the document is either the ‘prog-man-descrip’ text, if present, or the ‘detail’ text.

Each option in the option definitions file is fully documented in its usage. This includes all the information documented above for each option (see Section 7.4.5 [option attributes], page 88), plus the ‘doc’ attribute is appended. Since the ‘doc’ text is presumed to be designed for texinfo documentation, sed is used to convert some constructs from texi to nroff-for-man-pages. Specifically,

```
convert @code, @var and @samp into \fB...\fP phrases
convert @file into \fI...\fP phrases
Remove the '@' prefix from curly braces
Indent example regions
Delete the example commands
Replace ‘end example’ command with ".br"
Replace the ‘@*’ command with ".br"
```

This document is produced by invoking the following command:

```
autogen -L ${prefix}/share/autogen -T agman1.tpl options.def
```

Where '`${prefix}`' is the AutoGen installation prefix and '`options.def`' is the name of your product's option definition file. I do not use this very much, so any feedback or improvements would be greatly appreciated.

### 7.13.2 library man pages

Two global definitions are required, and then one library man page is produced for each `export_func` definition that is found. It is generally convenient to place these definitions as '`getdefs`' comments (see Section 8.5 [getdefs Invocation], page 159) near the procedure definition, but they may also be a separate AutoGen definitions file (see Chapter 2 [Definitions File], page 6). Each function will be cross referenced with their sister functions in a '`SEE ALSO`' section. A global `see_also` definition will be appended to this cross referencing text.

The two global definitions required are:

- library — This is the name of your library, without the '`lib`' prefix. The AutoOpts library is named '`libopts.so...`', so the `library` attribute would have the value `opts`.
- header — Generally, using a library with a compiled program entails `#include`-ing a header file. Name that header with this attribute. In the case of AutoOpts, it is generated and will vary based on the name of the option definition file. Consequently, '`your-opts.h`' is specified.

The `export_func` definition should contain the following attributes:

- name — The name of the procedure the library user may call.
- what — A brief sentence describing what the procedure does.
- doc — A detailed description of what the procedure does. It may ramble on for as long as necessary to properly describe it.
- err — A short description of how errors are handled.
- ret_type — The data type returned by the procedure. Omit this for `void` procedures.
- ret_desc — Describe what the returned value is, if needed.
- private — If specified, the function will **not** be documented. This is used, for example, to produce external declarations for functions that are not available for public use, but are used in the generated text.
- arg — This is a compound attribute that contains:
  - arg_type — The data type of the argument.
  - arg_name — A short name for it.
  - arg_desc — A brief description.

As a '`getdefs`' comment, this would appear something like this:

```
/*=--subblock=arg=arg_type,arg_name,arg_desc =*/
/*=*
 * library: opts
 * header:  your-opts.h
=*/
/*=export_func optionProcess
```

```
 *
 * what: this is the main option processing routine
 * arg:  + tOptions* + pOpts + program options descriptor +
 * arg:  + int       + argc  + program arg count  +
 * arg:  + char**    + argv  + program arg vector +
 * ret_type:  int
 * ret_desc:  the count of the arguments processed
 *
 * doc:  This is what it does.
 * err:  When it can't, it does this.
=*/
```

Note the `subblock` and `library` comments. `subblock` is an embedded '`getdefs`' option (see Section 8.5.6 [getdefs subblock], page 162) that tells it how to parse the `arg` attribute. The `library` and `header` entries are global definitions that apply to all the documented functions.

## 7.14 Using getopt(3C)

There is a template named, "`getopt.tpl`" that is distributed with AutoOpts. With it, you will have another source file generated for you that will utilize either the standard `getopt(3C)` or the GNU `getopt_long(3GNU)` function for parsing the command line arguments. Which is used is selected by the presence or absence of the `long-opts` program attribute. It will save you from being dependent upon the `libopts` library *and* it produces code ready for internationalization. However, it also carries with it some limitations on the use of AutoOpts features:

1. You cannot automatically take advantage of environment variable options or rc (ini) files.
2. You cannot use set membership, enumerated, range checked or stacked argument type options. In fact, you cannot use anything that depends upon the `libopts` library. You are constrained to options that take "`string`" arguments, though you may handle the option argument with a callback procedure.
3. You must specify every option as "settable" because the emitted code depends upon the `SET_OPT_XXX` macros having been defined.
4. You must specify a main procedure of type "main". The '`getopt.tpl`' template depends upon being able to compile the traditional .c file into a program and get it to emit the usage text.
5. For the same reason, the traditional option parsing table code must be emitted **before** the '`getopt.tpl`' template gets expanded.
6. The usage text is, therefore, statically defined.
7. You must supply some compile and link options via environment variables.

   '`srcdir`' In case the option definition file lives in a different directory.

   '`CFLAGS`' Any special flags required to compile. This should minimally include the output from running the `autoopts-config cflags` script.

   '`LDFLAGS`' Any special flags required to link. This should minimally include the output from running the `autoopts-config ldflags` script.

'CC' Set this only if "cc" cannot be found in $PATH (or it is not the one you want).

To use this, set the exported environment variables and then invoke autogen twice, in the following order:

```
autogen myprog-opts.def
autogen -T getopt.tpl myprog-opts.def
```

and you will have three new files: 'myprog-opts.h', 'myprog-opts.c', and 'getopt-progname.c', where "progname" is the name specified with the global prog-name attribute in the option definition file. You must compile and link both '.c' files into your program. If there are link failures, then you are using AutoOpts features that require the 'libopts' library. You must remove these features.

## 7.15 Internationalizing AutoOpts

The generated code for AutoOpts will enable and disable the translation of AutoOpts run time messages. If ENABLE_NLS is defined at compile time, then the _() macro may be used to specify a translation function. If undefined, it will default to gettext(3GNU). This define will also enable a callback function that optionProcess invokes at the beginning of option processing. The AutoOpts libopts library will always check for this "compiled with NLS" flag, so libopts does not need to be specially compiled. The strings returned by the translation function will be strdup(3)-ed and kept. They will not be re-translated, even if the locale changes, but they will also not be dependent upon reused or unmappable memory.

To internationalize option processing, you should first internationalize your program. Then, the option processing strings can be added to your translation text by processing the AutoOpts-generated 'my-opts.c' file and adding the distributed 'po/usage-txt.pot' file. (Also by extracting the strings yourself from the 'usage-txt.h' file.) When you call optionProcess, all of the user visible AutoOpts strings will be passed through the localization procedure established with the _() preprocessing macro.

## 7.16 Naming Conflicts

AutoOpts generates a header file that contains many C preprocessing macros and several external names. For the most part, they begin with either opt_ or option, or else they end with _opt. If this happens to conflict with other macros you are using, or if you are compiling multiple option sets in the same compilation unit, the conflicts can be avoided. You may specify an external name prefix (see Section 7.4.1 [program attributes], page 78) for all of the names generated for each set of option definitions.

Among these macros, several take an option name as a macro argument. Sometimes, this will inconveniently conflict. For example, if you specify an option named, debug, the emitted code will presume that DEBUG is not a preprocessing name. Or also, if you are building on a Windows platform, you may find that MicroSoft has usurped a number of user space names in its header files. Consequently, you will get a preprocessing error if you use, for example, HAVE_OPT(DEBUG) or HAVE_OPT(INTERNAL) (see Section 7.5.9 [HAVE_OPT], page 104) in your code. You may trigger an obvious warning for such conflicts by specifying the guard-option-names attribute (see Section 7.4.1 [program attributes], page 78). That emitted code will also #undef-ine the conflicting name.

# 8 Add-on packages for AutoGen

This chapter includes several programs that either work closely with AutoGen (extracting definitions or providing special formatting functions), or leverage off of AutoGen technology. There is also a formatting library that helps make AutoGen possible.

AutoOpts ought to appear in this list as well, but since it is the primary reason why many people would even look into AutoGen at all, I decided to leave it in the list of chapters.

## 8.1 Automated Finite State Machine

The templates to generate a finite state machine in C or C++ is included with AutoGen. The documentation is not. The documentation is in HTML format for viewing, or you can download FSM.

## 8.2 Combined RPC Marshalling

The templates and NFSv4 definitions are not included with AutoGen in any way. The folks that designed NFSv4 noticed that much time and bandwidth was wasted sending queries and responses when many of them could be bundled. The protocol bundles the data, but there is no support for it in rpcgen. That means you have to write your own code to do that. Until now. Download this and you will have a large, complex example of how to use `AutoXDR` for generating the marshaling and unmarshaling of combined RPC calls. There is a brief example on the web, but you should download AutoXDR.

## 8.3 Automated Event Management

Large software development projects invariably have a need to manage the distribution and display of state information and state changes. In other words, they need to manage their software events. Generally, each such project invents its own way of accomplishing this and then struggles to get all of its components to play the same way. It is a difficult process and not always completely successful. This project helps with that.

AutoEvents completely separates the tasks of supplying the data needed for a particular event from the methods used to manage the distribution and display of that event. Consequently, the programmer writing the code no longer has to worry about that part of the problem. Likewise the persons responsible for designing the event management and distribution no longer have to worry about getting programmers to write conforming code.

This is a work in progress. See my web page on the subject, if you are interested. I have some useful things put together, but it is not ready to call a product.

## 8.4 Invoking columns

This program has no explanation.

This program was designed for the purpose of generating compact, columnized tables. It will read a list of text items from standard in or a specified input file and produce a columnized listing of all the non-blank lines. Leading white space on each line is preserved, but trailing white space is stripped. Methods of applying per-entry and per-line embellishments are provided. See the formatting and separation arguments below.

This program is used by AutoGen to help clean up and organize its output.

See '`autogen/agen5/fsm.tpl`' and the generated output '`pseudo-fsm.h`'.

This function was not implemented as an expression function because either it would have to be many expression functions, or a provision would have to be added to provide options to expression functions. Maybe not a bad idea, but it is not being implemented at the moment.

A side benefit is that you can use it outside of AutoGen to columnize input, a la the `ls` command.

This section was generated by **AutoGen**, the aginfo template and the option descriptions for the `columns` program. It documents the columns usage text and option meanings.

This software is released under the GNU General Public License.

### 8.4.1 columns usage help (-?)

This is the automatically generated usage text for columns:

```
columns (GNU AutoGen) - Columnize Input Text - Ver. 1.2
USAGE:  columns [ -<flag> [<val>] | --<name>[{=| }<val>] ]...
  Flg Arg Option-Name    Description
   -W Num width          Maximum Line Width
                                   it must lie in the range: 16 to 4095
   -c Num columns        Desired number of columns
                                   it must lie in the range: 1 to 2048
   -w Num col-width      Set width of each column
                                   it must lie in the range: 1 to 2048
      Num spread         maximum spread added to column width
                                   it must lie in the range: 1 to 1024
      no  fill           Fill lines with input
                                 - prohibits these options:
                                 spread
                                 col-width
                                 separation
                                 line-separation
                                 by-columns
                                 sort
   -I Str indent         Line prefix or indentation
      Str first-indent   First line prefix
                                 - requires these options:
                                 indent
```

```
      Num tab-width      tab width
   -s opt sort           Sort input text
   -f Str format         Formatting string for each input
   -S Str separation     Separation string - follows all but last
      Str line-separation string at end of all lines but last
      no  by-columns     Print entries in column order
   -i Str input          Input file (if not stdin)
   -v opt version        Output version information and exit
   -? no  help           Display usage information and exit
   -! no  more-help      Extended usage information passed thru pager
   -> opt save-opts      Save the option state to a config file
   -< Str load-opts      Load options from a config file
                               - disabled as --no-load-opts
                               - may appear multiple times

Options are specified by doubled hyphens and their name
or by a single hyphen and the flag character.

The following option preset mechanisms are supported:
 - reading file /home/bkorb/ag/ag/columns/.columnsrc
 - reading file /home/root/usr/local/tmp/aghome-jBYZr6.d/.columnsrc
 - examining environment variables named COLUMNS_*

This program was designed for the purpose of generating compact,
columnized tables.  It will read a list of text items from standard
in or a specified input file and produce a columnized listing of
all the non-blank lines.  Leading white space on each line is
preserved, but trailing white space is stripped.  Methods of
applying per-entry and per-line embellishments are provided.
See the formatting and separation arguments below.

This program is used by AutoGen to help clean up and organize
its output.

please send bug reports to:  autogen-users@lists.sourceforge.net
```

### 8.4.2 width option (-W)

This is the "maximum line width" option. This option specifies the full width of the output line, including any start-of-line indentation. The output will fill each line as completely as possible, unless the column width has been explicitly specified. If the maximum width is less than the length of the widest input, you will get a single column of output.

### 8.4.3 columns option (-c)

This is the "desired number of columns" option. Use this option to specify exactly how many columns to produce. If that many columns will not fit within *line_width*, then the count will be reduced to the number that fit.

### 8.4.4 col-width option (-w)

This is the "set width of each column" option. Use this option to specify exactly how many characters are to be allocated for each column. If it is narrower than the widest entry, it will be over-ridden with the required width.

### 8.4.5 spread option

This is the "maximum spread added to column width" option. Use this option to specify exactly how many characters may be added to each column. It allows you to prevent columns from becoming too far apart.

### 8.4.6 fill option

This is the "fill lines with input" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- must not appear in combination with any of the following options: spread, col_width, separation, line_separation, by_columns, sort.

Instead of columnizing the input text, fill the output lines with the input lines. Blank lines on input will cause a blank line in the output.

### 8.4.7 indent option (-I)

This is the "line prefix or indentation" option. If a number, then this many spaces will be inserted at the start of every line. Otherwise, it is a line prefix that will be inserted at the start of every line.

### 8.4.8 first-indent option

This is the "first line prefix" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- must appear in combination with the following options: indent.

If a number, then this many spaces will be inserted at the start of the first line. Otherwise, it is a line prefix that will be inserted at the start of that line.

### 8.4.9 tab-width option

This is the "tab width" option. If an indentation string contains tabs, then this value is used to compute the ending column of the prefix string.

### 8.4.10 sort option (-s)

This is the "sort input text" option. Causes the input text to be sorted. If an argument is supplied, it is presumed to be a pattern and the sort is based upon the matched text. If the pattern starts with or consists of an asterisk (`*`), then the sort is case insensitive.

### 8.4.11 format option (-f)

This is the "formatting string for each input" option. If you need to reformat each input text, the argument to this option is interpreted as an `sprintf(3)` format that is used to produce each output entry.

### 8.4.12 separation option (-S)

This is the "separation string - follows all but last" option. Use this option if, for example, you wish a comma to appear after each entry except the last.

### 8.4.13 line-separation option

This is the "string at end of all lines but last" option. Use this option if, for example, you wish a backslash to appear at the end of every line, except the last.

### 8.4.14 by-columns option

This is the "print entries in column order" option. Normally, the entries are printed out in order by rows and then columns. This option will cause the entries to be ordered within columns. The final column, instead of the final row, may be shorter than the others.

### 8.4.15 input option (-i)

This is the "input file (if not stdin)" option. This program normally runs as a `filter`, reading from standard input, columnizing and writing to standard out. This option redirects input to a file.

## 8.5 Invoking getdefs

If no `input` argument is provided or is set to simply `"-"`, and if `stdin` is not a `tty`, then the list of input files will be read from `stdin`. This program extracts AutoGen definitions from a list of source files. Definitions are delimited by '/*=<entry-type> <entry-name>\n' and '=*/\n'. From that, this program creates a definition of the following form:

```
#line nnn "source-file-name"
entry_type = {
   name = entry_name;
   ...
};
```

The ellipsis "..." is filled in by text found between the two delimiters, using the following rules:

1. Each entry is located by the pattern `"\n[^*\n]*\\*[ \t]*([a-z][a-z0-9_]*):"`. Fundamentally, it finds a line that, after the first asterisk on the line, contains whitespace then a name and is immediately followed by a colon. The name becomes the name of the attribute and what follows, up to the next attribute, is its value.
2. If the first character of the value is either a single or double quote, then you are responsible for quoting the text as it gets inserted into the output definitions.
3. All the leading text on a line is stripped from the value. The leading text is everything before the first asterisk, the asterisk and all the whitespace characters that immediately follow it. If you want whitespace at the beginnings of the lines of text, you must do something like this:

   ```
   * mumble:
   * "  this is some\n"
   * "  indented text."
   ```

4. If the '<entry-name>' is followed by a comma, the word 'ifdef' (or 'ifndef') and a name 'if_name', then the above entry will appear as:

   ```
   #ifdef if_name
   #line nnn "source-file-name"
   entry_type = {
       name = entry_name;
       ...
   };
   #endif
   ```

5. If you use of the `subblock` option, you can specify a nested value, See Section 8.5.6 [getdefs subblock], page 162. That is, this text:

   ```
   * arg:  int, this, what-it-is
   ```

   with the '–subblock=arg=type,name,doc' option would yield:

   ```
   arg = { type = int; name = this; doc = what-it-is; };
   ```

This section was generated by **AutoGen**, the aginfo template and the option descriptions for the `getdefs` program. It documents the getdefs usage text and option meanings.

This software is released under the GNU General Public License.

### 8.5.1 getdefs usage help

This is the automatically generated usage text for getdefs:

```
getdefs (GNU AutoGen) - AutoGen Definition Extraction Tool - Ver. 1.4
USAGE:  getdefs [ <option-name>[{=| }<val>] ]...
   Arg Option-Name    Description
   Str defs-to-get    Regexp to look for after the "/*="
   opt ordering       Alphabetize or use named file
                              - disabled as --no-ordering
                              - enabled by default
   Num first-index    The first index to apply to groups
   Str input          Input file to search for defs
                              - may appear multiple times
                              - default option for unnamed options
   Str subblock       subblock definition names
                              - may appear multiple times
   Str listattr       attribute with list of values
                              - may appear multiple times
   opt filelist       Insert source file names into defs

Definition insertion options

   Arg Option-Name    Description
   Str assign         Global assignments
                              - may appear multiple times
   Str common-assign  Assignments common to all blocks
                              - may appear multiple times
   Str copy           File(s) to copy into definitions
                              - may appear multiple times
   opt srcfile        Insert source file name into each def
   opt linenum        Insert source line number into each def

Definition output disposition options:

   Arg Option-Name    Description
   Str output         Output file to open
                              - an alternate for autogen
   opt autogen        Invoke AutoGen with defs
                              - disabled as --no-autogen
                              - enabled by default
   Str template       Template Name
   Str agarg          AutoGen Argument
                              - prohibits these options:
                              output
                              - may appear multiple times
   Str base-name      Base name for output file(s)
                              - prohibits these options:
```

```
                                output

version and help options:

   Arg Option-Name    Description
   opt version        Output version information and exit
   no  help           Display usage information and exit
   no  more-help      Extended usage information passed thru pager
   opt save-opts      Save the option state to a config file
   Str load-opts      Load options from a config file
                                - disabled as --no-load-opts
                                - may appear multiple times

All arguments are named options.

If no ‘‘input’’ argument is provided or is set to simply "-", and if
‘‘stdin’’ is not a ‘‘tty’’, then the list of input files will be
read from ‘‘stdin’’.

The following option preset mechanisms are supported:
 - reading file /dev/null

This program extracts AutoGen definitions from a list of source files.
Definitions are delimited by ‘/*=<entry-type> <entry-name>\n’ and
‘=*/\n’.  From that, this program creates a definition of the
following form:

    #line nnn "source-file-name"
    entry_type = {
        name = entry_name;
        ...
    };

The ellipsis ’...’ is filled in by text found between the two
delimiters, with everything up through the first sequence of
asterisks deleted on every line.

There are two special ‘‘entry types’’:

*  The entry_type enclosure and the name entry will be omitted
   and the ellipsis will become top-level definitions.

-- The contents of the comment must be a single getdefs option.
   The option name must follow the double hyphen and its argument
   will be everything following the name.  This is intended for use
   with the ‘‘subblock’’ and ‘‘listattr’’ options.
```

```
please send bug reports to:  autogen-users@lists.sourceforge.net
```

### 8.5.2 defs-to-get option

This is the "regexp to look for after the "/*="" option. If you want definitions only from a particular category, or even with names matching particular patterns, then specify this regular expression for the text that must follow the `/*=`.

### 8.5.3 ordering option

This is the "alphabetize or use named file" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- is enabled by default.

By default, ordering is alphabetical by the entry name. Use, `no-ordering` if order is unimportant. Use `ordering` with no argument to order without case sensitivity. Use `ordering=<file-name>` if chronological order is important. getdefs will maintain the text content of `file-name`. `file-name` need not exist.

### 8.5.4 first-index option

This is the "the first index to apply to groups" option. By default, the first occurrence of a named definition will have an index of zero. Sometimes, that needs to be a reserved value. Provide this option to specify a different starting point.

### 8.5.5 input option

This is the "input file to search for defs" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- may appear an unlimited number of times.

All files that are to be searched for definitions must be named on the command line or read from `stdin`. If there is only one `input` option and it is the string, `"-"`, then the input file list is read from `stdin`. If a command line argument is not an option name and does not contain an assignment operator (`=`), then it defaults to being an input file name. At least one input file must be specified.

### 8.5.6 subblock option

This is the "subblock definition names" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- may appear an unlimited number of times.

This option is used to create shorthand entries for nested definitions. For example, with:

using subblock thus

```
--subblock=arg=argname,type,null
```

and defining an `arg` thus

```
arg: this, char *
```

will then expand to:

```
arg = { argname = this; type = "char *"; };
```

The "this, char *" string is separated at the commas, with the white space removed. You may use characters other than commas by starting the value string with a punctuation character other than a single or double quote character. You may also omit intermediate values by placing the commas next to each other with no intervening white space. For example, "+mumble++yes+" will expand to:
`arg = { argname = mumble; null = "yes"; };`.

### 8.5.7 listattr option

This is the "attribute with list of values" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- may appear an unlimited number of times.

This option is used to create shorthand entries for definitions that generally appear several times. That is, they tend to be a list of values. For example, with:
`listattr=foo` defined, the text:
`foo: this, is, a, multi-list` will then expand to:
`foo = 'this', 'is', 'a', 'multi-list';`
The texts are separated by the commas, with the white space removed. You may use characters other than commas by starting the value string with a punctuation character other than a single or double quote character.

### 8.5.8 filelist option

This is the "insert source file names into defs" option. Inserts the name of each input file into the output definitions. If no argument is supplied, the format will be:

```
infile = '%s';
```

If an argument is supplied, that string will be used for the entry name instead of *infile*.

### 8.5.9 assign option

This is the "global assignments" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- may appear an unlimited number of times.

The argument to each copy of this option will be inserted into the output definitions, with only a semicolon attached.

### 8.5.10 common-assign option

This is the "assignments common to all blocks" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- may appear an unlimited number of times.

The argument to each copy of this option will be inserted into each output definition, with only a semicolon attached.

### 8.5.11 copy option

This is the "file(s) to copy into definitions" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- may appear an unlimited number of times.

The content of each file named by these options will be inserted into the output definitions.

### 8.5.12 srcfile option

This is the "insert source file name into each def" option. Inserts the name of the input file where a definition was found into the output definition. If no argument is supplied, the format will be:

```
srcfile = '%s';
```

If an argument is supplied, that string will be used for the entry name instead of *srcfile*.

### 8.5.13 linenum option

This is the "insert source line number into each def" option. Inserts the line number in the input file where a definition was found into the output definition. If no argument is supplied, the format will be:

```
linenum = '%s';
```

If an argument is supplied, that string will be used for the entry name instead of *linenum*.

### 8.5.14 output option

This is the "output file to open" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- is a member of the autogen class of options.

If you are not sending the output to an AutoGen process, you may name an output file instead.

### 8.5.15 autogen option

This is the "invoke autogen with defs" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- is enabled by default.
- is a member of the autogen class of options.

This is the default output mode. Specifying `no-autogen` is equivalent to `output=-`. If you supply an argument to this option, that program will be started as if it were AutoGen and its standard in will be set to the output definitions of this program.

### 8.5.16 template option

This is the "template name" option. Specifies the template name to be used for generating the final output.

### 8.5.17 agarg option

This is the "autogen argument" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- may appear an unlimited number of times.

- must not appear in combination with any of the following options: output.

This is a pass-through argument. It allows you to specify any arbitrary argument to be passed to AutoGen.

### 8.5.18 base-name option

This is the "base name for output file(s)" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- must not appear in combination with any of the following options: output.

When output is going to AutoGen, a base name must either be supplied or derived. If this option is not supplied, then it is taken from the `template` option. If that is not provided either, then it is set to the base name of the current directory.

## 8.6 Invoking xml2ag

This program will convert any arbitrary XML file into equivalent AutoGen definitions, and invoke AutoGen. The template used will be derived from either:

- The –**override-tpl** command line option
- A top level XML attribute named, `"template"`

One or the other **must** be provided, or the program will exit with a failure message.

The *base-name* for the output will similarly be either:

- The –**base-name** command line option.
- The base name of the '`.xml`' file.

The definitions derived from XML generally have an extra layer of definition. Specifically, this XML input:

```
<mumble attr="foo">
  mumble-1
  <grumble>
  grumble, grumble, grumble.
</grumble>mumble, mumble
</mumble>
```

Will get converted into this:

```
mumble = {
  grumble = {
    text = 'grumble, grumble, grumble';
  };
  text = 'mumble-1';
  text = 'mumble, mumble';
};
```

Please notice that some information is lost. AutoGen cannot tell that "grumble" used to lie between the mumble texts. Also please note that you cannot assign:

```
grumble = 'grumble, grumble, grumble.';
```

because if another "grumble" has an attribute or multiple texts, it becomes impossible to have the definitions be the same type (compound or text values).

This section was generated by **AutoGen**, the aginfo template and the option descriptions for the `xml2ag` program. It documents the xml2ag usage text and option meanings.

This software is released under the GNU General Public License.

### 8.6.1 xml2ag usage help (-?)

This is the automatically generated usage text for xml2ag:

```
xml2ag (GNU AutoGen) - XML to AutoGen Definiton Converter - Ver. 5.9.5
USAGE:  xml2ag [ -<flag> [<val>] | --<name>[{=| }<val>] ]... [ <def-file> ]
  Flg Arg Option-Name    Description
   -O Str output         Output file in lieu of AutoGen processing
   -L Str templ-dirs     Template search directory list
                                 - may appear multiple times
```

```
   -T Str override-tpl   Override template file
   -l Str lib-template   Library template file
                                - may appear multiple times
   -b Str base-name      Base name for output file(s)
      Str definitions    Definitions input file
   -S Str load-scheme    Scheme code file to load
   -F Str load-functions Load scheme function library
   -s Str skip-suffix    Omit the file with this suffix
                                - may appear multiple times
   -o opt select-suffix  specify this output suffix
                                - may appear multiple times
      no  source-time    set mod times to latest source
   -m no  no-fmemopen    Do not use in-mem streams
      Str equate         characters considered equivalent
      no  writable       Allow output files to be writable
                                - disabled as --not-writable
      Num loop-limit     Limit on increment loops
                                  is scalable with a suffix: k/K/m/M/g/G/t/T
                                  it must lie in one of the ranges:
                                  -1 exactly, or
                                  1 to 16777216
   -t Num timeout        Time limit for servers
                                  it must lie in the range: 0 to 3600
      KWd trace          tracing level of detail
      Str trace-out      tracing output file or filter
      no  show-defs      Show the definition tree
   -D Str define         name to add to definition list
                                - may appear multiple times
   -U Str undefine       definition list removal pattern
                                - an alternate for define
   -v opt version        Output version information and exit
   -? no  help           Display usage information and exit
   -! no  more-help      Extended usage information passed thru pager

Options are specified by doubled hyphens and their name
or by a single hyphen and the flag character.

This program will convert any arbitrary XML file into equivalent
AutoGen definitions, and invoke AutoGen.

The valid "trace" option keywords are:
  nothing       debug-message server-shell  templates     block-macros
  expressions   everything
  or an integer between 0 and 6

The template will be derived from either:
*  the ``--override-tpl'' command line option
```

```
*  a top level XML attribute named, "template"

The ``base-name'' for the output will similarly be either:
*  the ``--base-name'' command line option
*  the base name of the .xml file

please send bug reports to:  autogen-users@lists.sourceforge.net
```

### 8.6.2 output option (-O)

This is the "output file in lieu of autogen processing" option. By default, the output is handed to an AutoGen for processing. However, you may save the definitions to a file instead.

### 8.6.3 templ-dirs option (-L)

This is the "template search directory list" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- may appear an unlimited number of times.

Pass-through AutoGen argument

### 8.6.4 override-tpl option (-T)

This is the "override template file" option. Pass-through AutoGen argument

### 8.6.5 lib-template option (-l)

This is the "library template file" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- may appear an unlimited number of times.

Pass-through AutoGen argument

### 8.6.6 base-name option (-b)

This is the "base name for output file(s)" option. Pass-through AutoGen argument

### 8.6.7 definitions option

This is the "definitions input file" option. Pass-through AutoGen argument

### 8.6.8 load-scheme option (-S)

This is the "scheme code file to load" option. Pass-through AutoGen argument

### 8.6.9 load-functions option (-F)

This is the "load scheme function library" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- must be compiled in by defining `HAVE_DLOPEN` during the compilation.

Pass-through AutoGen argument

### 8.6.10 skip-suffix option (-s)

This is the "omit the file with this suffix" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- may appear an unlimited number of times.

Pass-through AutoGen argument

### 8.6.11 select-suffix option (-o)

This is the "specify this output suffix" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- may appear an unlimited number of times.

Pass-through AutoGen argument

### 8.6.12 source-time option

This is the "set mod times to latest source" option. Pass-through AutoGen argument

### 8.6.13 no-fmemopen option (-m)

This is the "do not use in-mem streams" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- must be compiled in by defining `ENABLE_FMEMOPEN` during the compilation.

Pass-through AutoGen argument

### 8.6.14 equate option

This is the "characters considered equivalent" option. Pass-through AutoGen argument

### 8.6.15 writable option

This is the "allow output files to be writable" option. Pass-through AutoGen argument

### 8.6.16 loop-limit option

This is the "limit on increment loops" option. Pass-through AutoGen argument

### 8.6.17 timeout option (-t)

This is the "time limit for servers" option. Pass-through AutoGen argument

### 8.6.18 trace option

This is the "tracing level of detail" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- This option takes a keyword as its argument. The argument sets an enumeration value that can be tested by comparing the option value macro (OPT_VALUE_TRACE). The available keywords are:

```
nothing       debug-message server-shell
templates     block-macros  expressions
everything
```

Pass-through AutoGen argument

### 8.6.19 trace-out option

This is the "tracing output file or filter" option. Pass-through AutoGen argument

### 8.6.20 show-defs option

This is the "show the definition tree" option. Pass-through AutoGen argument

### 8.6.21 define option (-D)

This is the "name to add to definition list" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- may appear an unlimited number of times.

Pass-through AutoGen argument

### 8.6.22 undefine option (-U)

This is the "definition list removal pattern" option.

This option has some usage constraints. It:

- may appear an unlimited number of times.

Pass-through AutoGen argument

## 8.7 Replacement for Stdio Formatting Library

Using the 'printf' formatting routines in a portable fashion has always been a pain, and this package has been way more pain than anyone ever imagined. Hopefully, with this release of snprintfv, the pain is now over for all time.

The issues with portable usage are these:

1. Argument number specifiers are often either not implemented or are buggy. Even GNU libc, version 1 got it wrong.
2. ANSI/ISO "forgot" to provide a mechanism for computing argument lists for vararg procedures.
3. The argument array version of printf ('printfv()') is not generally available, does not work with the native printf, and does not have a working argument number specifier in the format specification. (Last I knew, anyway.)
4. You cannot fake varargs by calling 'vprintf()' with an array of arguments, because ANSI does not require such an implementation and some vendors play funny tricks because they are allowed to.

These four issues made it impossible for AutoGen to ship without its own implementation of the 'printf' formatting routines. Since we were forced to do this, we decided to make the formatting routines both better and more complete :-). We addressed these issues and added the following features to the common printf API:

5. The formatted output can be written to
   - a string allocated by the formatting function ('asprintf()').
   - a file descriptor instead of a file stream ('dprintf()').
   - a user specified stream ('stream_printf()').
6. The formatting functions can be augmented with your own functions. These functions are allowed to consume more than one character from the format, but must commence with a unique character. For example,

   ```
   "%{struct stat}\n"
   ```

   might be used with '{' registered to a procedure that would look up "struct stat" in a symbol table and do appropriate things, consuming the format string through the '}' character.

Gary V. Vaughan was generous enough to supply this implementation. Many thanks!!

For further details, the reader is referred to the snprintfv documentation. These functions are also available in the template processing as 'sprintf' (see Section 3.5.31 [SCM sprintf], page 44), 'printf' (see Section 3.5.26 [SCM printf], page 42), 'fprintf' (see Section 3.5.10 [SCM fprintf], page 37), and 'shellf' (see Section 3.5.30 [SCM shellf], page 43).

# 9 Some ideas for the future.

Here are some things that might happen in the distant future.

- Fix up current tools that contain miserably complex perl, shell, sed, awk and m4 scripts to instead use this tool.

# Appendix A Copying This Manual

You may copy this manual under the terms of the FDL (the GNU Free Documentation License).

Version 1.2, November 2002

Copyright © 2000,2001,2002 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
51 Franklin St, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301, USA

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies
of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

0. PREAMBLE

   The purpose of this License is to make a manual, textbook, or other functional and useful document *free* in the sense of freedom: to assure everyone the effective freedom to copy and redistribute it, with or without modifying it, either commercially or non-commercially. Secondarily, this License preserves for the author and publisher a way to get credit for their work, while not being considered responsible for modifications made by others.

   This License is a kind of "copyleft", which means that derivative works of the document must themselves be free in the same sense. It complements the GNU General Public License, which is a copyleft license designed for free software.

   We have designed this License in order to use it for manuals for free software, because free software needs free documentation: a free program should come with manuals providing the same freedoms that the software does. But this License is not limited to software manuals; it can be used for any textual work, regardless of subject matter or whether it is published as a printed book. We recommend this License principally for works whose purpose is instruction or reference.

1. APPLICABILITY AND DEFINITIONS

   This License applies to any manual or other work, in any medium, that contains a notice placed by the copyright holder saying it can be distributed under the terms of this License. Such a notice grants a world-wide, royalty-free license, unlimited in duration, to use that work under the conditions stated herein. The "Document", below, refers to any such manual or work. Any member of the public is a licensee, and is addressed as "you". You accept the license if you copy, modify or distribute the work in a way requiring permission under copyright law.

   A "Modified Version" of the Document means any work containing the Document or a portion of it, either copied verbatim, or with modifications and/or translated into another language.

A "Secondary Section" is a named appendix or a front-matter section of the Document that deals exclusively with the relationship of the publishers or authors of the Document to the Document's overall subject (or to related matters) and contains nothing that could fall directly within that overall subject. (Thus, if the Document is in part a textbook of mathematics, a Secondary Section may not explain any mathematics.) The relationship could be a matter of historical connection with the subject or with related matters, or of legal, commercial, philosophical, ethical or political position regarding them.

The "Invariant Sections" are certain Secondary Sections whose titles are designated, as being those of Invariant Sections, in the notice that says that the Document is released under this License. If a section does not fit the above definition of Secondary then it is not allowed to be designated as Invariant. The Document may contain zero Invariant Sections. If the Document does not identify any Invariant Sections then there are none.

The "Cover Texts" are certain short passages of text that are listed, as Front-Cover Texts or Back-Cover Texts, in the notice that says that the Document is released under this License. A Front-Cover Text may be at most 5 words, and a Back-Cover Text may be at most 25 words.

A "Transparent" copy of the Document means a machine-readable copy, represented in a format whose specification is available to the general public, that is suitable for revising the document straightforwardly with generic text editors or (for images composed of pixels) generic paint programs or (for drawings) some widely available drawing editor, and that is suitable for input to text formatters or for automatic translation to a variety of formats suitable for input to text formatters. A copy made in an otherwise Transparent file format whose markup, or absence of markup, has been arranged to thwart or discourage subsequent modification by readers is not Transparent. An image format is not Transparent if used for any substantial amount of text. A copy that is not "Transparent" is called "Opaque".

Examples of suitable formats for Transparent copies include plain ASCII without markup, Texinfo input format, LaTeX input format, SGML or XML using a publicly available DTD, and standard-conforming simple HTML, PostScript or PDF designed for human modification. Examples of transparent image formats include PNG, XCF and JPG. Opaque formats include proprietary formats that can be read and edited only by proprietary word processors, SGML or XML for which the DTD and/or processing tools are not generally available, and the machine-generated HTML, PostScript or PDF produced by some word processors for output purposes only.

The "Title Page" means, for a printed book, the title page itself, plus such following pages as are needed to hold, legibly, the material this License requires to appear in the title page. For works in formats which do not have any title page as such, "Title Page" means the text near the most prominent appearance of the work's title, preceding the beginning of the body of the text.

A section "Entitled XYZ" means a named subunit of the Document whose title either is precisely XYZ or contains XYZ in parentheses following text that translates XYZ in another language. (Here XYZ stands for a specific section name mentioned below, such as "Acknowledgements", "Dedications", "Endorsements", or "History".) To "Preserve the Title" of such a section when you modify the Document means that it remains a section "Entitled XYZ" according to this definition.

The Document may include Warranty Disclaimers next to the notice which states that this License applies to the Document. These Warranty Disclaimers are considered to be included by reference in this License, but only as regards disclaiming warranties: any other implication that these Warranty Disclaimers may have is void and has no effect on the meaning of this License.

2. VERBATIM COPYING

   You may copy and distribute the Document in any medium, either commercially or noncommercially, provided that this License, the copyright notices, and the license notice saying this License applies to the Document are reproduced in all copies, and that you add no other conditions whatsoever to those of this License. You may not use technical measures to obstruct or control the reading or further copying of the copies you make or distribute. However, you may accept compensation in exchange for copies. If you distribute a large enough number of copies you must also follow the conditions in section 3.

   You may also lend copies, under the same conditions stated above, and you may publicly display copies.

3. COPYING IN QUANTITY

   If you publish printed copies (or copies in media that commonly have printed covers) of the Document, numbering more than 100, and the Document's license notice requires Cover Texts, you must enclose the copies in covers that carry, clearly and legibly, all these Cover Texts: Front-Cover Texts on the front cover, and Back-Cover Texts on the back cover. Both covers must also clearly and legibly identify you as the publisher of these copies. The front cover must present the full title with all words of the title equally prominent and visible. You may add other material on the covers in addition. Copying with changes limited to the covers, as long as they preserve the title of the Document and satisfy these conditions, can be treated as verbatim copying in other respects.

   If the required texts for either cover are too voluminous to fit legibly, you should put the first ones listed (as many as fit reasonably) on the actual cover, and continue the rest onto adjacent pages.

   If you publish or distribute Opaque copies of the Document numbering more than 100, you must either include a machine-readable Transparent copy along with each Opaque copy, or state in or with each Opaque copy a computer-network location from which the general network-using public has access to download using public-standard network protocols a complete Transparent copy of the Document, free of added material. If you use the latter option, you must take reasonably prudent steps, when you begin distribution of Opaque copies in quantity, to ensure that this Transparent copy will remain thus accessible at the stated location until at least one year after the last time you distribute an Opaque copy (directly or through your agents or retailers) of that edition to the public.

   It is requested, but not required, that you contact the authors of the Document well before redistributing any large number of copies, to give them a chance to provide you with an updated version of the Document.

4. MODIFICATIONS

You may copy and distribute a Modified Version of the Document under the conditions of sections 2 and 3 above, provided that you release the Modified Version under precisely this License, with the Modified Version filling the role of the Document, thus licensing distribution and modification of the Modified Version to whoever possesses a copy of it. In addition, you must do these things in the Modified Version:

A. Use in the Title Page (and on the covers, if any) a title distinct from that of the Document, and from those of previous versions (which should, if there were any, be listed in the History section of the Document). You may use the same title as a previous version if the original publisher of that version gives permission.

B. List on the Title Page, as authors, one or more persons or entities responsible for authorship of the modifications in the Modified Version, together with at least five of the principal authors of the Document (all of its principal authors, if it has fewer than five), unless they release you from this requirement.

C. State on the Title page the name of the publisher of the Modified Version, as the publisher.

D. Preserve all the copyright notices of the Document.

E. Add an appropriate copyright notice for your modifications adjacent to the other copyright notices.

F. Include, immediately after the copyright notices, a license notice giving the public permission to use the Modified Version under the terms of this License, in the form shown in the Addendum below.

G. Preserve in that license notice the full lists of Invariant Sections and required Cover Texts given in the Document's license notice.

H. Include an unaltered copy of this License.

I. Preserve the section Entitled "History", Preserve its Title, and add to it an item stating at least the title, year, new authors, and publisher of the Modified Version as given on the Title Page. If there is no section Entitled "History" in the Document, create one stating the title, year, authors, and publisher of the Document as given on its Title Page, then add an item describing the Modified Version as stated in the previous sentence.

J. Preserve the network location, if any, given in the Document for public access to a Transparent copy of the Document, and likewise the network locations given in the Document for previous versions it was based on. These may be placed in the "History" section. You may omit a network location for a work that was published at least four years before the Document itself, or if the original publisher of the version it refers to gives permission.

K. For any section Entitled "Acknowledgements" or "Dedications", Preserve the Title of the section, and preserve in the section all the substance and tone of each of the contributor acknowledgements and/or dedications given therein.

L. Preserve all the Invariant Sections of the Document, unaltered in their text and in their titles. Section numbers or the equivalent are not considered part of the section titles.

M. Delete any section Entitled "Endorsements". Such a section may not be included in the Modified Version.

N. Do not retitle any existing section to be Entitled "Endorsements" or to conflict in title with any Invariant Section.

O. Preserve any Warranty Disclaimers.

If the Modified Version includes new front-matter sections or appendices that qualify as Secondary Sections and contain no material copied from the Document, you may at your option designate some or all of these sections as invariant. To do this, add their titles to the list of Invariant Sections in the Modified Version's license notice. These titles must be distinct from any other section titles.

You may add a section Entitled "Endorsements", provided it contains nothing but endorsements of your Modified Version by various parties—for example, statements of peer review or that the text has been approved by an organization as the authoritative definition of a standard.

You may add a passage of up to five words as a Front-Cover Text, and a passage of up to 25 words as a Back-Cover Text, to the end of the list of Cover Texts in the Modified Version. Only one passage of Front-Cover Text and one of Back-Cover Text may be added by (or through arrangements made by) any one entity. If the Document already includes a cover text for the same cover, previously added by you or by arrangement made by the same entity you are acting on behalf of, you may not add another; but you may replace the old one, on explicit permission from the previous publisher that added the old one.

The author(s) and publisher(s) of the Document do not by this License give permission to use their names for publicity for or to assert or imply endorsement of any Modified Version.

5. COMBINING DOCUMENTS

You may combine the Document with other documents released under this License, under the terms defined in section 4 above for modified versions, provided that you include in the combination all of the Invariant Sections of all of the original documents, unmodified, and list them all as Invariant Sections of your combined work in its license notice, and that you preserve all their Warranty Disclaimers.

The combined work need only contain one copy of this License, and multiple identical Invariant Sections may be replaced with a single copy. If there are multiple Invariant Sections with the same name but different contents, make the title of each such section unique by adding at the end of it, in parentheses, the name of the original author or publisher of that section if known, or else a unique number. Make the same adjustment to the section titles in the list of Invariant Sections in the license notice of the combined work.

In the combination, you must combine any sections Entitled "History" in the various original documents, forming one section Entitled "History"; likewise combine any sections Entitled "Acknowledgements", and any sections Entitled "Dedications". You must delete all sections Entitled "Endorsements."

6. COLLECTIONS OF DOCUMENTS

You may make a collection consisting of the Document and other documents released under this License, and replace the individual copies of this License in the various documents with a single copy that is included in the collection, provided that you

follow the rules of this License for verbatim copying of each of the documents in all other respects.

You may extract a single document from such a collection, and distribute it individually under this License, provided you insert a copy of this License into the extracted document, and follow this License in all other respects regarding verbatim copying of that document.

7. AGGREGATION WITH INDEPENDENT WORKS

   A compilation of the Document or its derivatives with other separate and independent documents or works, in or on a volume of a storage or distribution medium, is called an "aggregate" if the copyright resulting from the compilation is not used to limit the legal rights of the compilation's users beyond what the individual works permit. When the Document is included in an aggregate, this License does not apply to the other works in the aggregate which are not themselves derivative works of the Document.

   If the Cover Text requirement of section 3 is applicable to these copies of the Document, then if the Document is less than one half of the entire aggregate, the Document's Cover Texts may be placed on covers that bracket the Document within the aggregate, or the electronic equivalent of covers if the Document is in electronic form. Otherwise they must appear on printed covers that bracket the whole aggregate.

8. TRANSLATION

   Translation is considered a kind of modification, so you may distribute translations of the Document under the terms of section 4. Replacing Invariant Sections with translations requires special permission from their copyright holders, but you may include translations of some or all Invariant Sections in addition to the original versions of these Invariant Sections. You may include a translation of this License, and all the license notices in the Document, and any Warranty Disclaimers, provided that you also include the original English version of this License and the original versions of those notices and disclaimers. In case of a disagreement between the translation and the original version of this License or a notice or disclaimer, the original version will prevail.

   If a section in the Document is Entitled "Acknowledgements", "Dedications", or "History", the requirement (section 4) to Preserve its Title (section 1) will typically require changing the actual title.

9. TERMINATION

   You may not copy, modify, sublicense, or distribute the Document except as expressly provided for under this License. Any other attempt to copy, modify, sublicense or distribute the Document is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License. However, parties who have received copies, or rights, from you under this License will not have their licenses terminated so long as such parties remain in full compliance.

10. FUTURE REVISIONS OF THIS LICENSE

    The Free Software Foundation may publish new, revised versions of the GNU Free Documentation License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns. See http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/.

Each version of the License is given a distinguishing version number. If the Document specifies that a particular numbered version of this License "or any later version" applies to it, you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that specified version or of any later version that has been published (not as a draft) by the Free Software Foundation. If the Document does not specify a version number of this License, you may choose any version ever published (not as a draft) by the Free Software Foundation.

## ADDENDUM: How to use this License for your documents

To use this License in a document you have written, include a copy of the License in the document and put the following copyright and license notices just after the title page:

```
copyright (c)  by Bruce Korb - all rights reserved
Permission is granted to copy, distribute and/or modify this document
under the terms of the GNU Free Documentation License, Version 1.2
or any later version published by the Free Software Foundation;
with no Invariant Sections, no Front-Cover Texts, and no Back-Cover
Texts.  A copy of the license is included in the section entitled ``GNU
Free Documentation License''.
```

If you have Invariant Sections, Front-Cover Texts and Back-Cover Texts, replace the "with...Texts." line with this:

```
with the Invariant Sections being list their titles, with
the Front-Cover Texts being list, and with the Back-Cover Texts
being list.
```

If you have Invariant Sections without Cover Texts, or some other combination of the three, merge those two alternatives to suit the situation.

If your document contains nontrivial examples of program code, we recommend releasing these examples in parallel under your choice of free software license, such as the GNU General Public License, to permit their use in free software.

# Concept Index

## #

#assert . . . 11
#define . . . 11
#elif . . . 11
#else . . . 11
#endif . . . 11
#endmac . . . 11
#endshell . . . 11
#error . . . 11
#if . . . 11
#ifdef . . . 12
#ifndef . . . 12
#include . . . 12
#line . . . 12
#macdef . . . 12
#option . . . 12
#shell . . . 12
#undef . . . 12

## •

.def file . . . 6
.tpl file . . . 20

## A

allow-errors . . . 78
Alternate Definition . . . 18
arg-default . . . 93
arg-optional . . . 93
arg-range . . . 93
arg-type . . . 92
argument . . . 78
assert directive . . . 11
Augmenting AutoGen . . . 59
AutoEvents . . . 154
AutoFSM . . . 154
`autogen` . . . 61
AutoGen Definition Extraction Tool . . . 159
autogen usage . . . 61
autogen-base-name . . . 64
autogen-define . . . 68
autogen-definitions . . . 64
autogen-equate . . . 66
autogen-lib-template . . . 63
autogen-load-functions . . . 64
autogen-load-scheme . . . 64
autogen-loop-limit . . . 66
autogen-no-fmemopen . . . 66
autogen-override-tpl . . . 63
autogen-select-suffix . . . 65
autogen-show-defs . . . 67
autogen-skip-suffix . . . 65
autogen-source-time . . . 65
autogen-templ-dirs . . . 63
autogen-timeout . . . 66
autogen-trace . . . 66
autogen-trace-out . . . 67
autogen-undefine . . . 68
autogen-writable . . . 66
AutoInfo . . . 149
AutoMan pages . . . 150
automatic options . . . 98
autoopts . . . 73
AutoOpts API . . . 101
AutoXDR . . . 154

## C

call-proc . . . 96
Columnize Input Text . . . 155
`columns` . . . 155
columns usage . . . 155
columns-by-columns . . . 158
columns-col-width . . . 157
columns-columns . . . 156
columns-fill . . . 157
columns-first-indent . . . 157
columns-format . . . 157
columns-indent . . . 157
columns-input . . . 158
columns-line-separation . . . 158
columns-separation . . . 158
columns-sort . . . 157
columns-spread . . . 157
columns-tab-width . . . 157
columns-width . . . 156
comments . . . 13
Common Option Attributes . . . 88
compound definitions . . . 7
concat-string . . . 9
conditional emit . . . 56, 57
config-header . . . 78
configuration file . . . 78, 89, 99, 102, 132
Configuration File . . . 128, 130
Configuration File example . . . 128
configuring . . . 69
copyright . . . 86

## D

define directive . . . 11
define macro . . . 53
Definition Index . . . 9
definitions . . . 7
definitions file . . . 6
descrip . . . 88
design goals . . . 1

detail ... 87
directives ... 10
disable ... 89
diversion ... 57
documentation attributes ... 97
Dynamic Definition Text ... 10

## E

elif directive ... 11
else directive ... 11
enable ... 89
enabled ... 89
endif directive ... 11
endmac directive ... 11
endshell directive ... 11
environrc ... 78, 128
error directive ... 11
example, simple AutoGen ... 2
example, simple AutoOpts ... 76
explain ... 87
export ... 78
expression syntax ... 22
extract-code ... 96

## F

FDL, GNU Free Documentation License ... 172
features ... 73
file-exists ... 95
file-mode ... 95
finite state machine ... 154
flag-code ... 96
flag-proc ... 96
flags-cant ... 92
flags-must ... 92
fOptState ... 102
for loop ... 55
full-usage ... 79
futures ... 172

## G

`getdefs` ... 159
getdefs usage ... 160
getdefs-agarg ... 164
getdefs-assign ... 163
getdefs-autogen ... 164
getdefs-base-name ... 165
getdefs-common-assign ... 163
getdefs-copy ... 163
getdefs-defs-to-get ... 162
getdefs-filelist ... 163
getdefs-first-index ... 162
getdefs-input ... 162
getdefs-linenum ... 164
getdefs-listattr ... 163
getdefs-ordering ... 162
getdefs-output ... 164
getdefs-srcfile ... 164
getdefs-subblock ... 162
getdefs-template ... 164
getopt_long ... 152
gnu-usage ... 87
guard-option-names ... 79

## H

here-string ... 8
homerc ... 79

## I

identification ... 6
if directive ... 11
if test ... 56
ifdef directive ... 12
ifndef directive ... 12
immed-disable ... 91
immediate ... 91
immediate action ... 91
include ... 80
include directive ... 12
information attributes ... 86
Installing ... 71
Internationalizing AutoOpts ... 153
Internationalizing Options ... 97
Introduction ... 1

## K

keyword ... 92

## L

library attributes ... 80
Licensing ... 75
line directive ... 12
long-opts ... 80
looping, for ... 55

## M

m4 ... 5
macdef directive ... 12
macro syntax ... 51
macro, pseudo ... 20
main procedure ... 82
man-doc ... 98
max ... 88
min ... 89
must-set ... 89

## N

name ... 88

named option mode ... 80
Naming Conflicts ... 153
naming values ... 22
native macros ... 51
no-xlate ... 80

## O

open-file ... 95
optActualIndex ... 102
optActualValue ... 102
optIndex ... 102
Option Argument Handling ... 95
option argument name ... 97
Option Arguments ... 92
option attributes ... 88
Option Conflict Attributes ... 92
Option Definitions ... 77
option descriptor ... 120
option directive ... 12
option documentation ... 97
Option Processing Data ... 102
optOccCt ... 102
opts-ptr ... 87
optValue ... 102

## P

package ... 87
predefines ... 12
prefix ... 80
preserve-case ... 87
prog-desc ... 87
prog-info-descrip ... 98
prog-man-descrip ... 98
prog-name ... 78
prog-title ... 78
program attributes ... 78
pseudo macro ... 20
pzLastArg ... 103
pzProgName ... 103
pzProgPath ... 103

## R

rcfile ... 80, 122, 128
Redirecting Output ... 57
remote procedure call ... 154
reorder-args ... 87
Required Attributes ... 88
RPC ... 154
rpcgen ... 154

## S

sample rcfile ... 123
scaled ... 93
sectioned config file ... 131
shell directive ... 12
shell options ... 122, 132
shell-generated string ... 8
short-usage ... 80
Signal Names ... 70
simple definitions ... 7
stack-arg ... 96
standard options ... 99
string, double quote ... 7
string, shell output ... 8
string, single quote ... 7

## T

template file ... 6, 20
The Automated Program Generator ... 61

## U

undef directive ... 12
unstack-arg ... 96
usage ... 87
using AutoOpts ... 120

## V

value ... 88
version ... 80

## W

while test ... 57

## X

XDR ... 154
XML to AutoGen Definiton Converter ... 166
`xml2ag` ... 166
xml2ag usage ... 166
xml2ag-base-name ... 168
xml2ag-define ... 170
xml2ag-definitions ... 168
xml2ag-equate ... 169
xml2ag-lib-template ... 168
xml2ag-load-functions ... 168
xml2ag-load-scheme ... 168
xml2ag-loop-limit ... 169
xml2ag-no-fmemopen ... 169
xml2ag-output ... 168
xml2ag-override-tpl ... 168
xml2ag-select-suffix ... 169
xml2ag-show-defs ... 170
xml2ag-skip-suffix ... 169
xml2ag-source-time ... 169
xml2ag-templ-dirs ... 168
xml2ag-timeout ... 169
xml2ag-trace ... 169
xml2ag-trace-out ... 170
xml2ag-undefine ... 170
xml2ag-writable ... 169

# Function Index

## *


*= ... 45
*=* ... 44
*== ... 45
*===* ... 44
*~ ... 45
*~* ... 46
*~~ ... 45
*~~* ... 46


## =


= ... 46
=* ... 47
== ... 45
==* ... 47


## ~


~ ... 46
~* ... 46
~~ ... 46
~~* ... 47


## A


ag-fprintf ... 35
ag-function? ... 25
agpl ... 35
ao_string_tokenize ... 109
autogen-version ... 34


## B


base-name ... 25
bsd ... 35


## C


c-file-line-fmt ... 34
c-string ... 35
CASE ... 52
chdir ... 25
CLEAR_OPT ... 103
COMMENT ... 53
configFileLoad ... 110
count ... 25
COUNT_OPT ... 103


## D


DEBUG ... 53
def-file ... 25
def-file-line ... 26
DEFINE ... 53
DESC ... 103
DISABLE_OPT_name ... 104
dne ... 26


## E


ELIF ... 54
ELSE ... 54
emit ... 36
emit-string-table ... 36
ENABLED_OPT ... 104
ENDDEF ... 54
ENDFOR ... 54
ENDIF ... 55
ENDWHILE ... 55
error ... 26
error-source-line ... 36
ERRSKIP_OPTERR ... 104
ERRSTOP_OPTERR ... 104
ESAC ... 55
exist? ... 27
EXPR ... 55
extract ... 36


## F


find-file ... 27
first-for? ... 27
FOR ... 55
for-by ... 27
for-from ... 27
for-index ... 28
for-sep ... 28
for-to ... 28
format-arg-count ... 37
fprintf ... 37


## G


get ... 28
get-c-name ... 28
get-down-name ... 28
get-up-name ... 29
gperf ... 38
gperf-code ... 38
gpl ... 38


## H


HAVE_OPT ... 104
hide-email ... 39
high-lim ... 29
html-escape-encode ... 39

## I

IF ... 56
in? ... 39
INCLUDE ... 56
INVOKE ... 57
ISSEL_OPT ... 104
ISUNUSED_OPT ... 104

## J

join ... 39

## K

kr-string ... 39

## L

last-for? ... 29
len ... 29
lgpl ... 40
license ... 40
low-lim ... 29

## M

make-gperf ... 40
make-header-guard ... 30
makefile-script ... 40
match-value? ... 30
max ... 41
min ... 41

## O

OPT_ARG ... 104
OPT_NO_XLAT_CFG_NAMES ... 105
OPT_NO_XLAT_OPT_NAMES ... 105
OPT_VALUE_name ... 105
OPT_XLAT_CFG_NAMES ... 105
OPT_XLAT_OPT_NAMES ... 105
OPTION_CT ... 104
optionFileLoad ... 111
optionFindNextValue ... 111
optionFindValue ... 112
optionFree ... 112
optionGetValue ... 112
optionLoadLine ... 113
optionNextValue ... 113
optionOnlyUsage ... 114
optionProcess ... 114
optionRestore ... 115
optionSaveFile ... 115
optionSaveState ... 116
optionUnloadNested ... 116
optionVersion ... 116
out-delete ... 31
out-depth ... 31
out-emit-suspended ... 31
out-line ... 31
out-move ... 31
out-name ... 31
out-pop ... 31
out-push-add ... 32
out-push-new ... 32
out-resume ... 32
out-suspend ... 32
out-switch ... 32

## P

pathfind ... 117
prefix ... 41
printf ... 42

## R

raw-shell-str ... 42
RESTART_OPT ... 105

## S

SELECT ... 57
set-option ... 33
set-writable ... 33
SET_OPT_name ... 106
shell ... 42
shell-str ... 42
shellf ... 43
sprintf ... 44
stack ... 33
STACKCT_OPT ... 106
STACKLST_OPT ... 106
START_OPT ... 107
STATE_OPT ... 107
strequate ... 117
streqvcmp ... 118
streqvmap ... 118
string->c-name! ... 49
string-capitalize ... 44
string-capitalize! ... 44
string-contains-eqv? ... 44
string-contains? ... 44
string-downcase ... 44
string-downcase! ... 45
string-end-eqv-match? ... 45
string-end-match? ... 45
string-ends-eqv? ... 45
string-ends-with? ... 45
string-equals? ... 45
string-eqv-match? ... 46
string-eqv? ... 46
string-has-eqv-match? ... 46
string-has-match? ... 46
string-match? ... 46

string-start-eqv-match? ..... 46
string-start-match? ..... 47
string-starts-eqv? ..... 47
string-starts-with? ..... 47
string-substitute ..... 47
string-table-add ..... 47
string-table-add-ref ..... 48
string-table-new ..... 48
string-table-size ..... 49
string-tr ..... 49
string-tr! ..... 50
string-upcase ..... 50
string-upcase! ..... 50
strneqvcmp ..... 119
strtransform ..... 119
sub-shell-str ..... 50
suffix ..... 33
sum ..... 50

## T

teOptIndex ..... 109
tpl-file ..... 33
tpl-file-line ..... 33

## U

UNKNOWN ..... 57
USAGE ..... 107

## V

VALUE_OPT_name ..... 108
VERSION ..... 108
version-compare ..... 50

## W

WHICH_IDX_name ..... 108
WHICH_OPT_name ..... 108
WHILE ..... 57

# Table of Contents


**1 Introduction . . . 1**

1.1 The Purpose of AutoGen . . . 1
1.2 A Simple Example . . . 2
1.3 csh/zsh caveat . . . 4
1.4 A User's Perspective . . . 4

**2 Definitions File . . . 6**

2.1 The Identification Definition . . . 6
2.2 Named Definitions . . . 7
2.2.1 Definition List . . . 7
2.2.2 Double Quote String . . . 7
2.2.3 Single Quote String . . . 7
2.2.4 Shell Output String . . . 8
2.2.5 An Unquoted String . . . 8
2.2.6 Scheme Result String . . . 8
2.2.7 A Here String . . . 8
2.2.8 Concatenated Strings . . . 9
2.3 Assigning an Index to a Definition . . . 9
2.4 Dynamic Text . . . 10
2.5 Controlling What Gets Processed . . . 10
2.6 Pre-defined Names . . . 12
2.7 Commenting Your Definitions . . . 13
2.8 What it all looks like. . . . 13
2.9 Finite State Machine Grammar . . . 14
2.10 Alternate Definition Forms . . . 18

**3 Template File . . . 20**

3.1 Format of the Pseudo Macro . . . 20
3.2 Naming a value . . . 22
3.3 Macro Expression Syntax . . . 22
3.3.1 Apply Code . . . 23
3.3.2 Basic Expression . . . 24
3.4 AutoGen Scheme Functions . . . 25
3.4.1 '`ag-function?`' - test for function . . . 25
3.4.2 '`base-name`' - base output name . . . 25
3.4.3 '`chdir`' - Change current directory . . . 25
3.4.4 '`count`' - definition count . . . 25
3.4.5 '`def-file`' - definitions file name . . . 25
3.4.6 '`def-file-line`' - get a definition file+line number . . . 26
3.4.7 '`dne`' - "Do Not Edit" warning . . . 26
3.4.8 '`error`' - display message and exit . . . 26
3.4.9 '`exist?`' - test for value name . . . 27

3.4.10 'find-file' - locate a file in the search path ..... 27
3.4.11 'first-for?' - detect first iteration ..... 27
3.4.12 'for-by' - set iteration step ..... 27
3.4.13 'for-from' - set initial index ..... 27
3.4.14 'for-index' - get current loop index ..... 28
3.4.15 'for-sep' - set loop separation string ..... 28
3.4.16 'for-to' - set ending index ..... 28
3.4.17 'get' - get named value ..... 28
3.4.18 'get-c-name' - get named value, mapped to C name syntax ..... 28
3.4.19 'get-down-name' - get lower cased named value, mapped to C name syntax ..... 28
3.4.20 'get-up-name' - get upper cased named value, mapped to C name syntax ..... 29
3.4.21 'high-lim' - get highest value index ..... 29
3.4.22 'last-for?' - detect last iteration ..... 29
3.4.23 'len' - get count of values ..... 29
3.4.24 'low-lim' - get lowest value index ..... 29
3.4.25 'make-header-guard' - make self-inclusion guard ..... 30
3.4.26 'match-value?' - test for matching value ..... 30
3.4.27 'out-delete' - delete current output file ..... 31
3.4.28 'out-depth' - output file stack depth ..... 31
3.4.29 'out-emit-suspended' - emit the text of suspended output ..... 31
3.4.30 'out-line' - output file line number ..... 31
3.4.31 'out-move' - change name of output file ..... 31
3.4.32 'out-name' - current output file name ..... 31
3.4.33 'out-pop' - close current output file ..... 31
3.4.34 'out-push-add' - append output to file ..... 32
3.4.35 'out-push-new' - purge and create output file ..... 32
3.4.36 'out-resume' - resume suspended output file ..... 32
3.4.37 'out-suspend' - suspend current output file ..... 32
3.4.38 'out-switch' - close and create new output ..... 32
3.4.39 'set-option' - Set a command line option ..... 33
3.4.40 'set-writable' - Make the output file be writable ..... 33
3.4.41 'stack' - make list of AutoGen values ..... 33
3.4.42 'suffix' - get the current suffix ..... 33
3.4.43 'tpl-file' - get the template file name ..... 33
3.4.44 'tpl-file-line' - get the template file+line number ..... 33
3.4.45 'autogen-version' - autogen version number ..... 34
3.4.46 format file info as, "#line nn "file"" ..... 34
3.5 Common Scheme Functions ..... 35
3.5.1 'ag-fprintf' - format to autogen stream ..... 35
3.5.2 'agpl' - GNU Affero General Public License ..... 35
3.5.3 'bsd' - BSD Public License ..... 35
3.5.4 'c-string' - emit string for ANSI C ..... 35
3.5.5 'emit' - emit the text for each argument ..... 36
3.5.6 'emit-string-table' - output a string table ..... 36

3.5.7 'error-source-line' - display of file & line ..... 36
3.5.8 'extract' - extract text from another file ..... 36
3.5.9 'format-arg-count' - count the args to a format ..... 37
3.5.10 'fprintf' - format to a file ..... 37
3.5.11 'gperf' - perform a perfect hash function ..... 38
3.5.12 'gperf-code' - emit the source of the generated gperf program ..... 38
3.5.13 'gpl' - GNU General Public License ..... 38
3.5.14 'hide-email' - convert eaddr to javascript ..... 39
3.5.15 'html-escape-encode' - encode html special characters .. 39
3.5.16 'in?' - test for string in list ..... 39
3.5.17 'join' - join string list with separator ..... 39
3.5.18 'kr-string' - emit string for K&R C ..... 39
3.5.19 'lgpl' - GNU Library General Public License ..... 40
3.5.20 'license' - an arbitrary license ..... 40
3.5.21 'make-gperf' - build a perfect hash function program .... 40
3.5.22 'makefile-script' - create makefile script ..... 40
3.5.23 'max' - maximum value in list ..... 41
3.5.24 'min' - minimum value in list ..... 41
3.5.25 'prefix' - prefix lines with a string ..... 41
3.5.26 'printf' - format to stdout ..... 42
3.5.27 'raw-shell-str' - single quote shell string ..... 42
3.5.28 'shell' - invoke a shell script ..... 42
3.5.29 'shell-str' - double quote shell string ..... 42
3.5.30 'shellf' - format a string, run shell ..... 43
3.5.31 'sprintf' - format a string ..... 44
3.5.32 'string-capitalize' - capitalize a new string ..... 44
3.5.33 'string-capitalize!' - capitalize a string ..... 44
3.5.34 'string-contains-eqv?' - caseless substring ..... 44
3.5.35 'string-contains?' - substring match ..... 44
3.5.36 'string-downcase' - lower case a new string ..... 44
3.5.37 'string-downcase!' - make a string be lower case ..... 45
3.5.38 'string-end-eqv-match?' - caseless regex ending ..... 45
3.5.39 'string-end-match?' - regex match end ..... 45
3.5.40 'string-ends-eqv?' - caseless string ending ..... 45
3.5.41 'string-ends-with?' - string ending ..... 45
3.5.42 'string-equals?' - string matching ..... 45
3.5.43 'string-eqv-match?' - caseless regex match ..... 46
3.5.44 'string-eqv?' - caseless string match ..... 46
3.5.45 'string-has-eqv-match?' - caseless regex contains ..... 46
3.5.46 'string-has-match?' - contained regex match ..... 46
3.5.47 'string-match?' - regex match ..... 46
3.5.48 'string-start-eqv-match?' - caseless regex start ..... 46
3.5.49 'string-start-match?' - regex match start ..... 47
3.5.50 'string-starts-eqv?' - caseless string start ..... 47
3.5.51 'string-starts-with?' - string starting ..... 47
3.5.52 'string-substitute' - multiple global replacements ..... 47
3.5.53 'string-table-add' - Add an entry to a string table .... 47

3.5.54 'string-table-add-ref' - Add an entry to a string table, get reference ... 48
3.5.55 'string-table-new' - create a string table ... 48
3.5.56 'string-table-size' - print the current size of a string table ... 49
3.5.57 'string->c-name!' - map non-name chars to underscore ... 49
3.5.58 'string-tr' - convert characters with new result ... 49
3.5.59 'string-tr!' - convert characters ... 50
3.5.60 'string-upcase' - upper case a new string ... 50
3.5.61 'string-upcase!' - make a string be upper case ... 50
3.5.62 'sub-shell-str' - back quoted (sub-)shell string ... 50
3.5.63 'sum' - sum of values in list ... 50
3.5.64 'version-compare' - compare two version numbers ... 50
3.6 AutoGen Native Macros ... 51
3.6.1 AutoGen Macro Syntax ... 51
3.6.2 CASE - Select one of several template blocks ... 52
3.6.3 COMMENT - A block of comment to be ignored ... 53
3.6.4 DEBUG - Print debug message to trace output ... 53
3.6.5 DEFINE - Define a user AutoGen macro ... 53
3.6.6 ELIF - Alternate Conditional Template Block ... 54
3.6.7 ELSE - Alternate Template Block ... 54
3.6.8 ENDDEF - Ends a macro definition ... 54
3.6.9 ENDFOR - Terminates the FOR function template block ... 54
3.6.10 ENDIF - Terminate the IF Template Block ... 55
3.6.11 ENDWHILE - Terminate the WHILE Template Block ... 55
3.6.12 ESAC - Terminate the CASE Template Block ... 55
3.6.13 EXPR - Evaluate and emit an Expression ... 55
3.6.14 FOR - Emit a template block multiple times ... 55
3.6.15 IF - Conditionally Emit a Template Block ... 56
3.6.16 INCLUDE - Read in and emit a template block ... 56
3.6.17 INVOKE - Invoke a User Defined Macro ... 57
3.6.18 SELECT - Selection block for CASE function ... 57
3.6.19 UNKNOWN - Either a user macro or a value name ... 57
3.6.20 WHILE - Conditionally loop over a Template Block ... 57
3.7 Redirecting Output ... 57

**4 Augmenting AutoGen Features ... 59**

4.1 Shell Output Commands ... 59
4.2 Guile Macros ... 59
4.3 Guile Callout Functions ... 59
4.4 AutoGen Macros ... 60

5 Invoking autogen . . . . . 61
5.1 autogen usage help (-?) . . . . . 61
5.2 templ-dirs option (-L) . . . . . 63
5.3 override-tpl option (-T) . . . . . 63
5.4 lib-template option (-l) . . . . . 63
5.5 base-name option (-b) . . . . . 64
5.6 definitions option . . . . . 64
5.7 load-scheme option (-S) . . . . . 64
5.8 load-functions option (-F) . . . . . 64
5.9 skip-suffix option (-s) . . . . . 65
5.10 select-suffix option (-o) . . . . . 65
5.11 source-time option . . . . . 65
5.12 no-fmemopen option (-m) . . . . . 66
5.13 equate option . . . . . 66
5.14 writable option . . . . . 66
5.15 loop-limit option . . . . . 66
5.16 timeout option (-t) . . . . . 66
5.17 trace option . . . . . 66
5.18 trace-out option . . . . . 67
5.19 show-defs option . . . . . 67
5.20 define option (-D) . . . . . 68
5.21 undefine option (-U) . . . . . 68

6 Configuring and Installing . . . . . 69
6.1 Configuring AutoGen . . . . . 69
6.2 AutoGen as a CGI server . . . . . 70
6.3 Signal Names . . . . . 70
6.4 Installing AutoGen . . . . . 71

7 Automated Option Processing . . . . . 73
7.1 AutoOpts Features . . . . . 73
7.2 AutoOpts Licensing . . . . . 75
7.3 Quick Start . . . . . 76
7.4 Option Definitions . . . . . 77
7.4.1 Program Description Attributes . . . . . 78
7.4.2 Options for Library Code . . . . . 80
7.4.2.1 AutoOpt-ed Library for AutoOpt-ed Program . . . . . 81
7.4.2.2 AutoOpt-ed Library for Regular Program . . . . . 81
7.4.2.3 AutoOpt-ed Program Calls Regular Library . . . . . 82
7.4.3 Generating main procedures . . . . . 82
7.4.3.1 guile: main and inner_main procedures . . . . . 82
7.4.3.2 shell-process: emit Bourne shell results . . . . . 82
7.4.3.3 shell-parser: emit Bourne shell script . . . . . 83
7.4.3.4 main: user supplied main procedure . . . . . 83
7.4.3.5 include: code emitted from included template . . . . . 84
7.4.3.6 invoke: code emitted from AutoGen macro . . . . . 84
7.4.3.7 for-each: perform function on each argument . . . . . 84

7.4.4 Program Information Attributes . . . . . 86
7.4.5 Option Attributes . . . . . 88
7.4.5.1 Required Attributes . . . . . 88
7.4.5.2 Common Option Attributes . . . . . 88
7.4.5.3 Program may set option . . . . . 89
7.4.5.4 Option cannot be pre-configured . . . . . 89
7.4.5.5 Option Equivalence Class . . . . . 90
7.4.5.6 Default Option . . . . . 90
7.4.5.7 Option Sectioning Comment . . . . . 91
7.4.5.8 Translator Notes . . . . . 91
7.4.5.9 Immediate Action Attributes . . . . . 91
7.4.5.10 Option Conflict Attributes . . . . . 92
7.4.6 Option Argument Specification . . . . . 92
7.4.6.1 Keyword list . . . . . 92
7.4.6.2 Option Argument Optional . . . . . 93
7.4.6.3 Default Option Argument Value . . . . . 93
7.4.6.4 Arg Type String . . . . . 93
7.4.6.5 Arg Type Number . . . . . 93
7.4.6.6 Arg Type Boolean . . . . . 94
7.4.6.7 Arg Type Keyword . . . . . 94
7.4.6.8 Arg Type Set Membership . . . . . 94
7.4.6.9 Arg Type Hierarchical . . . . . 95
7.4.6.10 Arg Type File Name . . . . . 95
7.4.7 Option Argument Handling . . . . . 95
7.4.8 Internationalizing Options . . . . . 97
7.4.9 Man and Info doc Attributes . . . . . 97
7.4.10 Automatically Supported Options . . . . . 98
7.4.11 Library of Standard Options . . . . . 99
7.5 Programmatic Interface . . . . . 101
7.5.1 Data for Option Processing . . . . . 102
7.5.2 CLEAR_OPT( <NAME> ) - Clear Option Markings . . . . . 103
7.5.3 COUNT_OPT( <NAME> ) - Definition Count . . . . . 103
7.5.4 DESC( <NAME> ) - Option Descriptor . . . . . 103
7.5.5 DISABLE_OPT_name - Disable an option . . . . . 104
7.5.6 ENABLED_OPT( <NAME> ) - Is Option Enabled? . . . . . 104
7.5.7 ERRSKIP_OPTERR - Ignore Option Errors . . . . . 104
7.5.8 ERRSTOP_OPTERR - Stop on Errors . . . . . 104
7.5.9 HAVE_OPT( <NAME> ) - Have this option? . . . . . 104
7.5.10 ISSEL_OPT( <NAME> ) - Is Option Selected? . . . . . 104
7.5.11 ISUNUSED_OPT( <NAME> ) - Never Specified? . . . . . 104
7.5.12 OPTION_CT - Full Count of Options . . . . . 104
7.5.13 OPT_ARG( <NAME> ) - Option Argument String . . . . . 104
7.5.14 OPT_NO_XLAT_CFG_NAMES - option name xlation . . 105
7.5.15 OPT_NO_XLAT_OPT_NAMES - option name xlation . . 105
7.5.16 OPT_VALUE_name - Option Argument Value . . . . . 105
7.5.17 OPT_XLAT_CFG_NAMES - option name xlation . . . . . 105
7.5.18 OPT_XLAT_OPT_NAMES - option name xlation . . . . . 105
7.5.19 RESTART_OPT( n ) - Resume Option Processing . . . . . 105

7.5.20 SET_OPT_name - Force an option to be set ..... 106
7.5.21 STACKCT_OPT( <NAME> ) - Stacked Arg Count ..... 106
7.5.22 STACKLST_OPT( <NAME> ) - Argument Stack ..... 106
7.5.23 START_OPT - Restart Option Processing ..... 107
7.5.24 STATE_OPT( <NAME> ) - Option State ..... 107
7.5.25 USAGE( exit-code ) - Usage invocation macro ..... 107
7.5.26 VALUE_OPT_name - Option Flag Value ..... 108
7.5.27 VERSION - Version and Full Version ..... 108
7.5.28 WHICH_IDX_name - Which Equivalenced Index ..... 108
7.5.29 WHICH_OPT_name - Which Equivalenced Option ..... 108
7.5.30 teOptIndex - Option Index and Enumeration ..... 109
7.5.31 OPTIONS_STRUCT_VERSION - active version ..... 109
7.5.32 libopts External Procedures ..... 109
7.5.32.1 ao_string_tokenize ..... 109
7.5.32.2 configFileLoad ..... 110
7.5.32.3 optionFileLoad ..... 111
7.5.32.4 optionFindNextValue ..... 111
7.5.32.5 optionFindValue ..... 112
7.5.32.6 optionFree ..... 112
7.5.32.7 optionGetValue ..... 112
7.5.32.8 optionLoadLine ..... 113
7.5.32.9 optionNextValue ..... 113
7.5.32.10 optionOnlyUsage ..... 114
7.5.32.11 optionProcess ..... 114
7.5.32.12 optionRestore ..... 115
7.5.32.13 optionSaveFile ..... 115
7.5.32.14 optionSaveState ..... 116
7.5.32.15 optionUnloadNested ..... 116
7.5.32.16 optionVersion ..... 116
7.5.32.17 pathfind ..... 117
7.5.32.18 strequate ..... 117
7.5.32.19 streqvcmp ..... 118
7.5.32.20 streqvmap ..... 118
7.5.32.21 strneqvcmp ..... 119
7.5.32.22 strtransform ..... 119
7.6 Multi-Threading ..... 119
7.7 Option Descriptor File ..... 120
7.8 Using AutoOpts ..... 120
7.8.1 local-only use ..... 120
7.8.2 binary distro, AutoOpts not installed ..... 121
7.8.3 binary distro, AutoOpts pre-installed ..... 121
7.8.4 source distro, AutoOpts pre-installed ..... 121
7.8.5 source distro, AutoOpts not installed ..... 121
7.9 Configuring your program ..... 122
7.9.1 configuration file presets ..... 122
7.9.2 Saving the presets into a configuration file ..... 123
7.9.3 Creating a sample configuration file ..... 123
7.9.4 environment variable presets ..... 128

7.9.5 Config file only example . . . 128
7.10 Configuration File Format . . . 130
7.10.1 assigning a string value to a configurable . . . 130
7.10.2 integer values . . . 131
7.10.3 hierarchical values . . . 131
7.10.4 configuration file sections . . . 131
7.10.5 comments in the configuration file . . . 131
7.11 AutoOpts for Shell Scripts . . . 132
7.11.1 Parsing with an Executable . . . 132
7.11.2 Parsing with a Portable Script . . . 133
7.12 Automated Info Docs . . . 149
7.12.1 "invoking" info docs . . . 149
7.12.2 library info docs . . . 150
7.13 Automated Man Pages . . . 150
7.13.1 command line man pages . . . 150
7.13.2 library man pages . . . 151
7.14 Using getopt(3C) . . . 152
7.15 Internationalizing AutoOpts . . . 153
7.16 Naming Conflicts . . . 153

**8 Add-on packages for AutoGen . . . 154**

8.1 Automated Finite State Machine . . . 154
8.2 Combined RPC Marshalling . . . 154
8.3 Automated Event Management . . . 154
8.4 Invoking columns . . . 155
8.4.1 columns usage help (-?) . . . 155
8.4.2 width option (-W) . . . 156
8.4.3 columns option (-c) . . . 156
8.4.4 col-width option (-w) . . . 157
8.4.5 spread option . . . 157
8.4.6 fill option . . . 157
8.4.7 indent option (-I) . . . 157
8.4.8 first-indent option . . . 157
8.4.9 tab-width option . . . 157
8.4.10 sort option (-s) . . . 157
8.4.11 format option (-f) . . . 157
8.4.12 separation option (-S) . . . 158
8.4.13 line-separation option . . . 158
8.4.14 by-columns option . . . 158
8.4.15 input option (-i) . . . 158
8.5 Invoking getdefs . . . 159
8.5.1 getdefs usage help . . . 160
8.5.2 defs-to-get option . . . 162
8.5.3 ordering option . . . 162
8.5.4 first-index option . . . 162
8.5.5 input option . . . 162
8.5.6 subblock option . . . 162
8.5.7 listattr option . . . 163

8.5.8 filelist option . . . 163
8.5.9 assign option . . . 163
8.5.10 common-assign option . . . 163
8.5.11 copy option . . . 163
8.5.12 srcfile option . . . 164
8.5.13 linenum option . . . 164
8.5.14 output option . . . 164
8.5.15 autogen option . . . 164
8.5.16 template option . . . 164
8.5.17 agarg option . . . 164
8.5.18 base-name option . . . 165
8.6 Invoking xml2ag . . . 166
8.6.1 xml2ag usage help (-?) . . . 166
8.6.2 output option (-O) . . . 168
8.6.3 templ-dirs option (-L) . . . 168
8.6.4 override-tpl option (-T) . . . 168
8.6.5 lib-template option (-l) . . . 168
8.6.6 base-name option (-b) . . . 168
8.6.7 definitions option . . . 168
8.6.8 load-scheme option (-S) . . . 168
8.6.9 load-functions option (-F) . . . 168
8.6.10 skip-suffix option (-s) . . . 169
8.6.11 select-suffix option (-o) . . . 169
8.6.12 source-time option . . . 169
8.6.13 no-fmemopen option (-m) . . . 169
8.6.14 equate option . . . 169
8.6.15 writable option . . . 169
8.6.16 loop-limit option . . . 169
8.6.17 timeout option (-t) . . . 169
8.6.18 trace option . . . 169
8.6.19 trace-out option . . . 170
8.6.20 show-defs option . . . 170
8.6.21 define option (-D) . . . 170
8.6.22 undefine option (-U) . . . 170
8.7 Replacement for Stdio Formatting Library . . . 171

**9 Some ideas for the future. . . . 172**

**Appendix A Copying This Manual . . . 172**

**Concept Index . . . 180**

**Function Index . . . 183**